#### 新概念第三册课文精读详解 50 篇

♣ 分享

标签: 新概念英语

Lesson 1 A puma at large 逃遁的美洲狮

一、【 Text 】课文

Pumas are large, cat-like animals which are found in America. When reports came into London Zoo that a wild puma had been spotted forty-five miles south of London, they were not taken seriously. However, as the evidence began to accumulate, experts from the Zoo felt obliged to investigate, for the descriptions given by people who claimed to have seen the puma were extraordinarily similar.

The hunt for the puma began in a small village where a woman picking blackberries saw 'a large cat' only five yards away from her. It immediately ran away when she saw it, and experts confirmed that a puma will not attack a human being unless it is cornered. The search proved difficult, for the puma was often observed at one place in the morning and at another place twenty miles away in the evening. Wherever it went, it left behind it a trail of dead deer and small animals like rabbits. Paw prints were seen in a number of places and puma fur was found clinging to bushes. Several people complained of 'cat-like noises' at night and a businessman on a fishing trip saw the puma up a tree. The experts were now fully convinced that the animal was a puma, but where had it come from? As no pumas had been reported missing from any zoo in the country, this one must have been in the possession of a private collector and somehow managed to escape. The hunt went on for several weeks, but the puma was not caught. It is disturbing to think that a dangerous wild animal is still at large in the quiet countryside.

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

puma n. 美洲狮

spot v. 看出,发现

evidence n. 证据

accumulate v. 积累,积聚

oblige v. 使...感到必须

hunt n. 追猎;寻找

blackberry n. 黑莓

human being 人类

corner v. 使走投无路,使陷入困境

trail n. 一串,一系列

print n. 印痕

cling (clung, clung) v. 粘

convince v. 使…信服

somehow adv. 不知怎么搞地,不知什么原因

disturb v. 令人不安

学习词汇时仅知道汉语语义是不够的,要把单词放在语句中体会其应用

学习关键句型结构时则要把它放在段落结构或文章里

spot v. 看出,发现

pick out / see / recognize / catch sight of

eg: A tall man is easy to spot in the crowd.

spot(做动词时候)=see: 强调结果、辨别出、看见、识别、发现。

find 强调发现的结果。

find out 查出事实真相。

discover 做出重大发现

notice 注意到

observe 观察

watch 观察活动中的人或画面 斑点 spot n. eg: There is a white spot on the shirt. on the spot 1, 立刻, 马上( at once, immediately ) Anyone breaking the rules will be asked to leave on the spot. 在现场 2,at the place of the action Wherever she is needed, she is quickly on the spot. 证据 evidence [u]n. When the police arrived, he had already destroyed the evidence. evidence=proof 显而易见的 . in evidence: He was in evidence at the party. evidently adv. evident adj. 积累,积聚 accumulate vt,vi. 强调积累的过程 accumulate As the evidence accumulates, experts from the zoo felt obliged to investigate. gather vt. 聚集,把某人召集在某处 收集,采集 collect 集合,集会, vt. 装配 assemble

大量地贮存

hoard

The squirrel hoards up nuts for the cold winter.

hoard up= store up

amass 积聚(主要用于诗歌和文学作品)

oblige v. 使…感到必须

feel obliged to do sth. 感觉有必要做某事

be obliged to do sth 被迫做某事

hunt n. 追猎;寻找

run after 强调追赶、追求 .

seek 追寻 (梦想,理想) = pursue

chase 追赶.

hunt for

search 搜寻某处为了寻找到某人或某物

corner v. 使走投无路,使陷入困境

corner n. 角落

at the corner of the street

in the corner of the room

on the corner of the desk

be cornered .....被逼得走投无路

常用于被动语态:

The thief was cornered at last.

The problem cornered me. 这个问题把我难例了。

trail n. 一串,一系列

trail==follow vt. 跟踪

eg: The police trailed the criminal to the place where he was hiding.

cling (clung, clung ) v. 粘

eg: She is always clinging to her mother.

He clung to the hope that he would succeed.( 抱有,怀有)

stick 粘住 stick to 坚持 sticky adj. 粘的

convince vt. 使…信服

convince sb. of sth 使 sb 相信 sth

和宾语从句 that 搭配使用

没有宾语的情况下要采用主系表结构: be convinced

sb be convicned sb 相信

somehow adv. 不知怎么搞地,不知什么原因

by some means, in some way, for some reason unknown

somewhat ==a little

disturb v. 令人不安

disturbing adj. 令人不安的 disturbed 感到不安的

surprising 令人吃惊的 surprised 感到吃惊的

exciting 令人激动的 excited 感到激动的

#### 三、【课文精析】

at large

1:逃遁的,没有被控制的。

2:详细的 (in detail)

3:总体来讲 ( as a whole )

Key sentence:

Pandas are large cat-like animals which are found in Asia.

life-like: 栩栩如生的

一般来讲定语从句和同位语从句紧随在被修饰名词后面, 但为了保持句子平衡, 也可以把谓语动词放到从句之前

定语从句只是对于被修饰词的补充说明、修饰。

同位语从句则是讲述被修饰名词的内容

定语从句的引导词:

指人:主语 who; 宾语 who/whom; 定语 whose

表达事物: that( 也可指人 )/ which

时间状语: when; 地点状语: where; 原因状语: why

同位语从句:名词做主语、宾语时,关系词用 that 而不是 which

时间 when; 地点 where

eg: An idea came to her that she might do the experiment in another way.

I have no idea what has happened to him.

定语从句中没有 what 这个关系词,但它可以引导同位语从句

(An idea ) ... come to sb. 某人突然想到了 ......

take sth. seriously ==deal with sth. seriously 认真(严肃)对待某事

take sth. lightly: 草率对待某事

as 随着

过去分词做定语

claim to have done sth : 声称曾经作过某事

confirm : be sure, be certain

search =hunt

leave behind : 把某物留在后面

Wherever he went, the wound soldier left behind him a trail of blood. 都留下道道血迹。 伤员所到之处,

英文的表达方式重点在于突出客观事实,而中文则善于运用动作的执行者

complain of / about: 抱怨

on + 名词: 强调动作正在进行

on the rise: 在上升

在增加 on the increase: 在观看 on the watch: 在比赛中 on the match: on the fishing trip: 在钓鱼的途中 on holiday: 在度假 fully: completely, entirely in the possession of sb ==in sb's possession 归某人所有 拥有某物 in possession of sth. 拥有 take possession of eg: The beautiful car is in my possession / in the possession of me. I am in possession of the beautiful car. The person in possession of the big house is excited. It is disturbing to think that 一想到 ......就心里不安 eg: It is disturbing to think that I felt my examination.

一、【 Text 】课文

Lesson 2 Thirteen equals one

Our vicar is always raising money for one cause or another, but he has never managed to get enough money to have the church clock repaired. The big clock which used to strike the hours day and night was damaged many years ago and has been silent ever since.

十三等于一

One night, however, our vicar woke up with a start: the clock was striking the hours! Looking at his watch, he saw that it was one o'clock, but the bell struck thirteen times before it stopped. Armed with a torch, the vicar went up into the clock tower to see what was going on. In the torchlight, he caught sight of a figure whom he immediately recognized as Bill Wilkins, our local grocer.

'Whatever are you doing up here Bill?' asked the vicar in surprise.

'I'm trying to repair the bell,' answered Bill.' I've been coming up here night after night for weeks now. You see, I was hoping to give you a surprise.'

'You certainly did give me a surprise!' said the vicar. 'You've probably woken up everyone in the village as well. Still, I'm glad the bell is working again.'

'That's the trouble, vicar,' answered Bill. 'It's working all right, but I'm afraid that at one o'clock it will strike thirteen times and there's nothing I can do about it.'

'We'll get used to that, Bill,' said the vicar. 'Thirteen is not as good as one, but it's better than nothing. Now let's go downstairs and have a cup of tea.'

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

equal v. 等于

raise v. 募集;筹(款)

vicar n. 牧师

torchlight n. 电筒光

equal v. 等于

A equal B

与 ... 相匹敌 None of us can equal her, either in beauty or as a dancer.

eg:Mary is quite equal to John in brains.

be equal to + n: 1. 与…相匹敌

# 2. 有能力做某事 to- 介词

eg: I am equal to running the company.

raise v. 募集;筹(款)

raise money 筹款

raise price 提高

raise a horse 饲养

raise a family 供养

raise wheet 种植小麦

raise an army 招募

raise a shout 发出喊声

vicar n. 牧师

torchlight n. 电筒光

# 三、【课文精析】

现在进行时和 always 等频度副词的搭配 —— 表示说话人带有的情感色彩

Tom is always doing homework.

Tom is always does his homework.

He is always making noises.

one or another : 表示某种、这样或那样

get enough money : 筹集足够的资金来做某事

I have to get enough money to have my house repaired.

have the church clock repaired -----have sth. done 找某人来做某事

have the plane repaired have hair cut

某人所遭受到的意外某种情况 ----- 主语必须是发出动作的人

His wallet was stolen. He had his wallet stolen.

used to: 过去常常做,而现在不再发生的事情了

He used to smoke every day.

however 用于口语,主要用于句首,作文中,最好用在句中、句尾,要用逗号分隔开来

He said that it was so, he was mistake, however.

or: He said that it was so, however, he was mistake.

I know his story, however, I wouldn?t like to tell you.

I know his story, I, however, wouldn?t like to tell you.

however 可用 nevertheless nonetheless 替换

start: 惊跳、惊奇

Eg: The voice made him start.

What a start you give me. 你真吓了我一跳

He stood up with a start.

before ...才

Armed with a torch
现在分词和过去分词的用法
分词做状语 / 定语时, 一定要注意它和逻辑主语要呼应一致
recognized sb as :认出某人是
regard sb as, think of sb as, treat sb as( 把某人对待为 ), have on sb as (把某人尊敬为)
whatever: ever 用来加强语气
night after night : 一夜连着一夜
day after day / year after year / week after week / bus after bus
Key sentence:
you certainly did give me
did
肯定句中常用 do, did, does 加强语气和情感色彩,一定要位于动词原形之前。
Eg. You do like beauty today

用在句尾相当于 too, 主要用在肯定句中,但比 too 所表达的语意更优秀

still 用于句首,用逗号分隔开来,表达一个转折的关系。虽然如此,但是

as well

Nearly a week past before he could explain what had happen to him.

get used to, be used to do, be accustomed to, get accustomed to 惯于

get 强调渐进的过程, be 强调习惯了的状态

Eg: We are used to the cold weather here.

You will get used to the cold weather here.

你很快会适应这寒冷的天气的。

Lesson 3 An unknown goddess 无名女神

一、【 Text 】课文

Some time ago , an interesting discovery was made by archaeologists on the Aegean island of Kea . An American team explored a temple which stands in an ancient city on the promontory of Ayia Irini . The city at one time must have been prosperous for it enjoyed a high level of civilization . Houses--often three storeys high----were built of stone . They had large rooms with beautifully decorated walls . The city was even equipped with a drainage system , for a great many clay pipes were found beneath the narrow streets .

The temple which the archaeologists explored was used as a place of worship from the fifteenth century B.C. until Roman times. In the most sacred room of the temple, clay fragments of fifteen statues were found. Each of these represented a goddess and had, at one time, been painted. The body of one statue was found among remains dating from the fifteenth century B.C. Its missing head happened to be among remains of the fifth century B.C. This head must have been found in Classical times and carefully preserved. It was very old and precious even then. When the archaeologists reconstructed the fragments, they were amazed to find that the goddess turned out to be a very modern-looking woman. She stood three feet high and her hands rested on her hip. She was wearing a full-length skirt which swept the ground. Despite her great age, she was very graceful indeed, but, so far, the archaeologists have been unable to discover her identity.

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

goddess n. 女神

archaeologist n. 考古学家

Aegean adj. 爱琴海的

explore v. 考察,勘探

promontory n. 海角

prosperous adj. (经济上)繁荣的,昌盛的

civilization n. 文明

storey n. 楼层

drainage n. 排水

worship n. 崇拜

sacred adj. 宗教的,神圣的

fragment n. 碎片

remains n. 遗物, 遗迹,废墟

classical adj. (希腊罗马)古文化的

reconstruct v. 修复

rest v. 倚放,放置

hip n. 屁股,臀部

full-length adj. (裙衣)拖地长的

graceful adj. 优雅的

identity n. 身份

goddess n. 女神

archaeologist n. 考古学家

Aegean adj. 爱琴海的

explore v. 考察,勘探

The archaeologists are exploring the cave.

exploration n.

explorer n. 探险家

promontory n. 海角

prosperous adj. (经济上)繁荣的,昌盛的

Our finance is prosperous.

thriving 昌盛的,兴旺的

booming 蓬勃的,景气的

flourishing 繁茂的,健康的

civilization n. 文明

high level of civilization 高度文明

civilize v.

storey n. 楼层

drainage n. 排水

worship n. 崇拜

respect; admire

Who do you worship in th world?

warship n. 军舰战船

sacred adj. 宗教的,神圣的

holy adj. 神圣的,圣洁的

solemn adj. 庄严的,庄重的

sacred music 圣乐

sacred promise 神圣的诺言

fragment n. 碎片

remains n. 遗物 , 遗迹 , 废墟

classical adj. (希腊罗马)古文化的

classical music 古典音乐

classical education 人文科学教育

classic adj. 第一流的

This is a classic example of love at the first sight.

classic n. 杰作,经典之作

reconstruct v. 修复

re- 重新, 再次

construct 构造,建造,组织

build house 造建筑物

put up a tent

construct a sentence

construct a broken statuary

erect: build high buildings

erect monument 建造纪念碑

erect clock tower 建造钟楼

setup; establish; found 建立

Eg: setup s tudents? union

establish a school / rule

found a country

construction n.

constructive adj. 有教育意义的

constructor n. 建设者

rest v. 倚放,放置

hip n. 屁股,臀部

[口] 在服用兴奋剂,宗教信仰方面赶时髦的人;消息灵通人士; adj. 通晓的,见闻广的

Eg: Hary is a real hip. 玛丽真是赶时髦

The guy isn?t a hip. 这家伙什么都不懂

joined at the hip 表示交情极厚的

Eg: These two are joined at the hip.

shoot from the hip 信口开河

full-length adj.   (裙衣)拖地长的
a full-length dress
graceful adj.   优雅的
a graceful lady
elegant (behavier)
identity n. 身份
三、【课文精析】
an interesting discovery :强调 discovery , 体现发现这个动作被考古学家做出
主动语态难以突出重点 archaeologists made an interesting discovery
英文表达:结果、影响、效果为主语,强调对客观事实的陈述
Key sentence:
An American team explored a temple which
which 引导定语从句,修饰限定 temple
wh ich stands in an ancient city on
which = that; stand = lie, situate (vt.) locate (vt.)

Eg: Sorry, I said that I shouldn?t have shot from the hip.

An American team explored a temple which is located / situated in
An American team explored a temple which lie in
stand 表示高高坐落于,矗立于
Eg: She stands 1.75m. / A great tree stands on the mount.
Key sentence:
The city at one time must have been prosperous , for it
for 引导原因状语从句,对主句的附加说明
because 引导原因状语从句,重点突出原因
Eg: The day broke for the birds were singing.
at one time: 表达曾经,一度;过去时态的标志, once
must have been 对过去事实肯定的推测
enjoyed a high level of civilization. 享有高度文明
with
Eg: a young man with broad shoulders / an old lady with black hair
beautifully decorated 过去分词做定语
a beautifully dressed lady    衣着漂亮的女士  / a deserted carpark    废弃的停车场

a white painted door

被粉刷成白色的门

现在分词做定语,被修饰词与修饰词之间为;逻辑主动关系 a boy climbing the tree / the students reading in the room Key sentence: The city was even equipped with ... for ... were found 配备,装备 be equipped with Eg: the car was equipped with air conditioning. 引导原因状语从句 beneath the narrow streets / under the narrow streets prep. beneath = under 正下方 He is standing under / beneath the umbrella. 在进行中, under control 控制之中; under discussion 讨论之中; under repairs under: 修理之中 below: 在下方,强调斜下方 Eg: She is sitting below the window. 把...用作为 be used as / be used to be Eg:The box was used as a desk in the small village school. The wooden box was used as a bookcase.

The wooden box is used to contain books.

In the most sacred room of
Each of these represented been painted.
represent vt. 代表
I represent all the classmates.
The body of one statue was found
dating 现在分词,修饰 remains
the customs dating from 1990
date from 追溯到,从 开始
The tradition dates from the time when his grandfather was young.
The castle dates from the 14th century.
The castle dates back to the century.
Key sentence:
Its missing head happened to be among remains of
happen to 强调事情的偶然发生
Eg: I happen to have driven that kind of car. 我恰巧开过那种汽车。
He happened to find the ticket in his pocket. 他恰巧在口袋里找到那张票。
句式: It happens that
Eg: It happnes that I met her on my way to work

I happened to meet her on my way to work

巧遇,偶然发现,偶遇 happen on I happend on this old picture in the back of the drawer. Eg: Guess, who I happend on while I was in London last month? reconstruct: put together, piece together, restore 四个形容词: 感到惊讶的,语气递增 surprised; astonished; amazed; astounded astonished: much surprised amazed: very much surprised 惊奇 非常惊讶,尺愕,惊奇 astounded ... / to discover to find ... / to realize I?m not surprised to see you here. turn out 表明结果 turn out ( to be) + n./adj.

Eg: Our party turned out (to be) a success

the concert turned out to be failure.

It turned out that .......原来是(表示结果)

that 从句,或其他名词从句, it 作形式主语

Eg: It turned out that the diamond had been in the bank all the time.

It turned out that his statement was false.

as it turns out 人们后来发现 Eg: As it turns out, there was not need to worry. 人们后来发现 ,这篇报告被弄错了。 As it turns out, the report was mistaken. Key sentence: She stood three feet high and her hands rested on th hips. rest on = depend on, lean on His hand rested lightly on my shoulder. 进一步说明拖地的,曳地的 which swept the ground despite / in spite of +n./ 动名词 Key sentence: It is still a problem for the archaeologists up to now. so far,up to now 都是完成时的标志 find out he identity discover her identity:

Lesson 4 The double life of Alfred Bloggs

阿尔弗雷德。布洛格斯的双重生活

一、【 Text 】课文

These days, people who do manual work often receive far more money than people who work in offices. People who work in offices are frequently referred to as 'whitecollar workers' for the simple reason that they usually wear a collar and tie to go to work. Such is human nature, that a great many people are often willing to sacrifice higher pay for the privilege of becoming white-collar workers. This can give rise to curious situations, as it did in the case of Alfred Bloggs who worked as a dustman for the Ellesmere Corporation.

When he got married, Alf was too embarrassed to say anything to his wife about his job. He simply told her that he worked for the Corporation. Every morning, he left home dressed in a smart black suit. He then changed into overalls and spent the next eight hours as a dustman. Before returning home at night, he took a shower and changed back into his suit. Alf did this for over two years and his fellow dustmen kept his secret. AlF's wife has never discovered that she married a dustman and she never will, for Alf has just found another job. He will soon be working in an office. He will be earning only half as much as he used to, but he feels that his rise in status is well worth the loss of money. From now on, he will wear a suit all day and others will call him 'Mr. Bloggs', not 'Alf'.

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

manual adj. 体力的

collar n. 衣领

sacrifice v. 牺牲,献出

privilege n. 好处

dustman n. 清洁工

corporation n. 公司

overalls n. 工作服

shower n. 淋浴

secret n. 秘密

status n. 地位

```
manual adj.
                体力的
= physical
                 体力工作
 manual work:
                  脑力工作
 mental work:
  collar n.
            衣领
              白领 (do mental work)
white-collar:
             蓝领 (do manual work
blue-collar:
                                       )
(get) hot under the collar:
                               怒气冲天
               牺牲,献出
  sacrifice v.
vt. to give up for good purpose
Eg: sacrifice one?s life for the country
   sacrifice time
n.
make many sacrifices
 privilege n.
               好处
= advantage
特权 (=special right
牺牲掉自己的好处:
```

sacrifice one?s advantage / rivilege

特许某人做某事: give sb. the rivilege of doing sth. privileged adj. 荣幸的 工作服 overalls n. 男工作服; 女工作服 overall 秘密 secret n. adj. keep secret: 保密 It?s between you and me. I?II keep it to myself. confidential: 机密的 in secret: 私下里 = secretly, in private, privately I was told about it in secret. 知道内情 in the secret: He was in the secret from the beginning.

status n. 地位 = social position s-t-a-t-u-s s-t-a-t-u-e: 雕像,塑像

corporation n. 公司

shower n. 淋浴

dustman n. 清洁工

#### 三、【课文精析】

people who do manual work => blue-collar workers

people who work in offices / do mental work => white-collar workers

far more money

far-- 副词,用来强调语气 ==much

refer to ... as==regard ... as 把...看作为

I always refer to him as bookworm ( 书呆子).

for the simple reason => for 引导的原因状语从句

for the reason that 比 because 正式,因此多用于正式文体

human nature 人性化

such ... that ...

that 引导同位语从句,进一步补充说明 such 的基本内涵

His kindness was such that we will never forget him.
=> Such was his kindness
Such is human nature that we want to get a lot of things free.
Such 用在句首,要倒装
Such is human nature, that a great many people are often willing to sacrifice higher pay for the privilege of becoming white-collar workers.
介词 for 表示一种目的
be willing to do sth . == be ready to do sth. 心甘情愿做
give rise to, lead to, cause: 引起,惹起 =result in
Such conduct might give rise to misunderstandings.
The bad conditions have given rise to a lot of crimes.
in the case of: 至于,就而言
Eg: Stealing is no shame in the case of him.
in case of: ( 连) 万一,以防
Eg: You should ensure your house in case of fire.
Who 引导定语从句
Too embarrassed to say: 太尴尬而没有说明

be ashamed of

get married

marry v. 如果强调动作: He married the girl ...

如果表示状态: get married, be married

如果表明和某人已经结婚多长时间了: be married to sb.

The old man has been married to his wife 50 years.

Too ... to ... , 太...而不能

simply adv. 用来修饰限定动词 told

d ressed in a smart black suit- ---- 形容词短语表示一种状态

Eg: He got to work dressed in a beautiful coat.

He left home wearing a smart black suit.

Changed into: 换上

Before returning home ==Before he returned home

在 before 引导的时间状语从句中, return 的逻辑主语和主句的主语 he 是保持一致的,所以这个时间状语是由介词 before 和动名词搭配而成,相当于 before 引导的时间状语从句。

如果运用动名词形式,动名词的逻辑主语必须是主句的主语。

After getting home, he had a good rest.

Before having dinner, he finished all his homework.

She never will = she will never discover the secret

在省略句式中, never 要放在助动词之前。

,Will you go to see her??

, I will never go to see her.? / ,No, I never will.?

half as much as (he used to): 是 ... 的一半

half (a quarter, twice, three times ) as 表示倍数s ...

I won?t marry a m an who is twice as old as me.

We got three times as many people as we exected.

This room is about three times as large as that one.

... as (形容词或副词原形 )as ... 是 ...几倍

比 …多几倍: …times( 形容词或副词比较级 )

This road is four times longer than that one. => This road is five times as long as that one.

is well worth the loss of money

What he obtained is well worth the loss of time

Well 副词用来加强语气,修饰形容词 worth

Lesson 5 The facts 确切数字

一、【 Text 】课文

Editors of newspapers and magazines often go to extremes to provide their readers with unimportant facts and statistics. Last year a journalist had been instructed by a well-known magazine to write an article on the president's palace in a new African

republic. When the article arrived, the editor read the first sentence and then refused to publish it. The article began: 'Hundreds of steps lead to the high wall which surrounds the president's palace.' The editor at once sent the journalist a telegram instructing him to find out the exact number of steps and the height of the wall.

The journalist immediately set out to obtain these important facts, but he took a long time to send them. Meanwhile, the editor was getting impatient, for the magazine would soon go to press. He sent the journalist two more faxes, but received no reply. He sent yet another fax informing the journalist that if he did not reply soon he would be fired. When the journalist again failed to reply, the editor reluctantly published the article as it had originally been written. A week later, the editor at last received a telegram from the journalist. Not only had the poor man been arrested, but he had been sent to prison as well. However, he had at last been allowed to send a fax in which he informed the editor that he had been arrested while counting the 1,084 steps leading to the fifteen-foot wall which surrounded the president's palace.

二、【 New words and expressions

】 生词和短语

editor n. 编辑

extreme n. 极端

statistics n. 统计数字

journalist n. 新闻记者

president n. 总统

palace n. 王宫;宏伟的住宅

publish v. 出版

fax n. 传真

impatient adj. 不耐烦的

fire v. 解雇

originally adv. 起初,原先,从前

editor n. 编辑

edit vt. 编辑

edition n. 编辑

editorial adj. 编辑的,主编的; n. 社论,评论

extreme n. 极端

go to extreme(s) to do 走极端

Eg: He went to extreme to say that the play was the best one.

He went to extremes to say that his girlfriend was the most beautiful in the world.

go from one extreme to the other

statistics n. 统计数字

journalist n. 新闻记者

journalist ( 杂志 )新闻记者

reproter (电视台) 记者

correspondent (电台)记者,通讯员

president n. 总统

palace n. 王宫;宏伟的住宅

publish v. 出版

Eg: They have already published the magazine.

= print vt.

Eg: the book has already been published. The book has gone to press. 传真 fax n. sent a fax impatient adj. 不耐烦的 有耐心的 patient adj. patiently adv. 有耐心地 不耐烦的 impatient adj. 不耐烦地 impatiently adv. patience n. impatience 解雇 fire v. He was fired from his job. 正式) dismass ( The manager disissed him from his company. sack( 俚语) vt. 解雇,辞退

originally adv. 起初,原先,从前

Eg: If you do it wrong again you will be sacked.

original adj.

### 三、【课文精析】

go to extremes 走极端

provide = supply 给 ... , 提供 (通常与介词搭配连用)

provede sb. With sth. / provide sth. for sb.

He provided them with a bed for the night.

He provided a bed for them for the night.

instruct sb. to do sth ==tell sb. formally to do sth. 正式告诉某人做某事

, ... a journalist had been instructed by a well -known magazine to write an article on the president's palace in a new African republic.?

主动语态: A well-known magazine instructed a journalist to write an article on the president's palace in a new African republic.?

The teacher instructed him to take the examination.

on ==about 侧重强调课题专一

A book on radio

When the article arrived = When the editor received the article

refuse to publish it

refuse: vt. 拒绝(态度严厉)

decline: vt. 婉言谢绝

repudiate: vt. 断然拒绝

which 指代 the high wall

instructing —现在分词进一步补充说明 fax 的情况

set out to do sth .==decide and try to do 决定,打算,着手做 =set about doing

Eg: He set out to make his first 1,000,000 in 5 years

take sb. a long time to do sth. 某事花了某人很久的时间

It took me five days to write the article.

two more faxes = another two faxes

fail to

reluctantly = unwillingly 勉勉强强地,不情愿地

as it had originally been written = in its original way

倒装简述:

not only 位于句首,必须采用倒装形式

The poor man had not only been arrested, but had been sent to prison as well.

1. 否定副词位于句首,要倒装。

Never have I read such stories. 我从来没有读过这样的小说。

Nowhere can he find the book he wants.

无论在哪儿他都找不到他想要的那本书。

Hardly did I think it possible.

我并不认为这是可能的。

常用的否定副词: never, seldom, rarely, little, hardly, scarcely, nowhere, no sooner

2. 含有 only 的状语位于句首,句子要倒装

Only then did he realize that he had made a mistake. 自己犯了个错误。

只有到那个时候,他才认识到

Only when a great deal more information has been obtained will it be possible to

只有获得比较多的信息之后,才有可能计划去旅行。

plan a trip.

3. 还有 not 的副词短语位于句首,要倒装。

not for a moment, not in the least, not for an instant, not until

Not in the least is he interested in Englsh literature.

他对英国文学一点都不感兴趣。

Not for an instant did i believe he had lied.

4. 含有 no 的短语位于句首,句子要倒装。

at no time, in no way, in no sence, by no means, in no case, on no account, on no condition, under no circ umstances., 绝不?

Under no circumstances can we accpet the check.

无论如何我们不能接受这笔钱。

On no account must you leave the baby in the house. 房间里。 你无论如何也不能把婴儿留在

5. so,suh 位于句首,句子也要倒装。

He had at last been allowed = he had at last been permitted

be allowed to do, be permitted to do, asked for permission to do sth. 求允许,被允许

: 请

in which ----which 指代 fax

while 和现在分词搭配,做时间状语,表示 "正在做某事的过程中 ",可以用 while 引导的时间 状语从句去替换。

while he was counting ...

leading to 现在分词,通向

the steps leading to the presid ent?s palace

the road leading to the forest

fifteen-foot ---- 做前置定语,这里的名词必须是单数形式

which 指代 wall (避免和前面的句式结构相同 )

Lesson 6 Smash-and grab 砸橱窗抢劫

### 一、【 Text 】课文

The expensive shops in a famous arcade near Piccadilly were just opening. At this time of the morning, the arcade was almost empty. Mr Taylor, the owner of a jewellery shop was admiring a new window display. Two of his assistants had been working busily since 8 o'clock and had only just finished. Diamond necklaces and rings had been beautifully arranged on a background of black velvet. After gazing at the display for several minutes, Mr Taylor went back into his shop.

The silence was suddenly broken when a large car, with its headlights on and its horn blaring, roared down the arcade. It came to a stop outside the jeweler's. One man stayed at the wheel while two others with black stockings over their faces jumped out and smashed the window of the shop with iron bars. While this was going on, Mr Taylor was upstairs. He and his staff began throwing furniture out of the window. Chairs and tables went flying into the arcade. One of the thieves was struck by a heavy statue, but he was too busy helping himself to diamonds to notice any pain. The raid was all over in three minutes, for the men scrambled back into the car and it moved off at a fantastic speed. Just as it was leaving, Mr Taylor rushed out and ran after it throwing ashtrays and vases, but it was impossible to stop the thieves. They had got away with thousands of pounds worth of diamonds.

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

smash-and-grab n. 砸橱窗抢劫

arcade n. 有拱廊的街道(两旁常设商店)

Piccadilly n. 皮卡迪利大街

jewellery n. 珠宝(总称)

necklace n. 项链

ring n. 戒指

background n. 背景

velet n. 天鹅绒,丝绒

headlight n. (汽车等)前灯

blare v. 发嘟嘟声,吼叫

staff n. 全体工作人员

raid n. 偷袭

scramble v. 爬行

fantastic adj. 非常大的

### ashtray n. 烟灰缸

smash-and-grab n. 砸橱窗抢劫

smash vt. break sth. into pieces violently

vi. The dishes smashed on the floor.

smash into: 撞击到某处

Eg: The bus smashed into a big tree.

grab: seize suddenly

catch: get hold of sth. / sbb. moving

snatch: catch sth. / sb. suddenly and violently

seize: 强调抓住、抓到的结果 Fear seized her.

grasp: 强调掌握

hold : 强调抓牢、抓紧 He is holding an umbrella.

arcade n. 有拱廊的街道(两旁常设商店)

Piccadilly n. 皮卡迪利大街

jewellery n. 珠宝(总称)

necklace n. 项链

ring n. 戒指

background n. 背景

on the background of sth. 以什么为背景

background information

a man of excellent background

velet n. 天鹅绒,丝绒

headlight n. (汽车等)前灯

blare v. 发嘟嘟声,吼叫

staff n. 全体工作人员

raid n. 偷袭

scramble v. 爬行

scramble vi. creep quickly

climb vt. 爬上

mount: 登上

fantastic adj. 非常大的

fantastic: very great / large a fantastics of money

strange

wonderful

ashtray n. 烟灰缸

# 三、【课文精析】

in a famous arcade near Piccadilly 介词短语修饰 shops

Eg: The shoe shop in myneighbourhood was just opening.

Eg: Beijing, our capital, is eveloping enormously (at fantastic speed ).

Key sentence:

,After gazing at the display for several minutes, Mr Taylor went back into his shop.?

运用 ing 形式结构,其逻辑主语要和主句的主语保持一致

本课的重点句式: with 的复合结构

如果宾语和宾语补足语在逻辑上有主谓关系,应该采用动词的 ing 形式:

如果是动宾关系,应该采用过去分词形式作宾补

如果表达某事将要展开发生,要用动词不定式 to

She sat staring into the distance with tears streaming down her cheeks.

She stood ther with her hands resting on her hips.

He ran into the room with his face covered with tears.

With his homework finished, he felt happy.

He used to sleep with all the windows open.

He went out with his hat on.

With the meeting over, we went home.

He came in with a knife in his hand.

Two others with black stockings over their faces jumped out.

With a lot of work to do, he can?t go to the cinama.

总结:

with 用于句首或句尾,常表示状语、行为方式、原因、伴随状况等;如果跟在名词之后,是用来修饰限定该名词

a thief with atocking over his face

a teacher with a book under his arm

a room with the windows open

come to 后面常接名词,表示达到

come to a stop, come to an end, come to a decision, come to an agreement, come to an understanding, come to success, come to fame

停车 stop, draw up, pull up

at the barbar?s, at the butcher?s, at the baker?s, at the greengrocer?s. at the grocer?s, at the stationer?s, at the tobacconist?s, at the chemist?s

help oneself to : 自便

help yourselt to dish

My roommate helped herself to my clothes without asking me.

at a fantastic speed / at a tremendous speed / at a high(full) speed / with great speed

hundreds of thousands of dollars worth of jewel

数十万美元的珠宝

Word building

前缀构词法

如何运用常见的前缀

dis-

agreeable disagreeable content discontent

graceful dis graceful honest dis honest

satisfactory dissatisfactory

dis 还可以加在名词前 agreement disagreement honesty dishonesty ability disability disgrace grace comfort discomfort dis 可以加在动词前 agree dis agree disappear appear believe disbelieve 在名词前加 dis- 得到动词形式 dis- 还可表示除去、解除, courage discourage disroot root mask dismask burden disburden il- 加在以 | 开头的形容词之前 logical illbogical legal illegal illiterate literate im- 加在以 b,m,p 开头的形容词之前 impossible possible mortal immotal

immoral

moral

ir- 加在以 r 开头的形容词之前

regular rational irrational

resistible irresistible

in- 主要用于其他字母开头的词之前

human inhuman correct incorrect

justice injustice sinca\ere insincere

un- 只能手于形容词和动词之前

不

happy unhappy friendly unfriendly

lucky unlucky

无

conditional unconditional limited unlited

非

official unofficial just unjust

未,主要用于过去分词之前

undecided unfinished unexpected unhurt

用于动词之前表示做相反的动作

lock unlock tie untie

cover uncover pack unpack

dress undress load unload

#### 一、【 Text 】课文

Has it ever happened to you? Have you ever put your trousers in the washing machine and then remembered there was a large bank note in your back pocket?

When you rescued your trousers, did you find the note was whiter than white?

People who live in Britain needn 't despair when they make mistakes like this (and a lot of peole do)! Fortunately for them, the Bank of England has a team called Mutilated Ladies which deals with claims from people who fed their money to a machine or to their dog. Dogs, it seems, love to chew up money!

A recent case concerns Jane Butlin whose fiance , John, ruéns a successful furniture business. John had a very good day and put his wallet containing £ 3,000 into the microwave oven for safekeeping. Then he and Jane went horse-riding. When they got home, Jane cooked their dinner in the microwave oven and without realizing it, cooked her fianc é 's wallet as well. Imagine their dismay when they found a beautufully-cooked wallet and notes turned to ash! John went to see his bank magnager who sent the remains of wallet and the money to the secial department of the Band of England in Newcastle: the Mutilated Ladies! They examined the ' So long as there 's something to identify, remains and John got all hi s money back. ' Last year, we will give people their money back, ' said a spokeswoman for the Band. we paid £ 1.5m on 21,000 claims.

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

mutilate v. 使残缺不全

chew v. 咀嚼

fianc é n. 未婚夫

microwave n. 微波,微波炉

oven n. 炉灶

safekeeping n. 妥善保管

Newcastle n. 纽卡斯尔(英国港市)

identify v. 鉴别,识别

spokeswoman n. 女发言人

mutilate v. 使残缺不全

- vt. 经常用于被动语态
- 1,毁伤,残害。

He was mutilated in the accdient, and now has only one leg.

a multlated note

2, 把...搞砸了

You've already mutilated the novel by making such changes.

chew v. 咀嚼

A lot of people love chewing gums.

Don?t bite off more than one can chew. 不要自不量力

chew the fat: 聊天

chewed up : (俚) 着急的,担心的

Don't get chewed up / about your examination.

fianc é n. 未婚夫

microwave n. 微波,微波炉

micro- = tiny, very very small

microswitch, microfilm, microscope, microsecond, microphone, microbiology

反义前缀: macro- = great. large

oven n. 炉灶

safekeeping n. 妥善保管 keep sth. safe Please keep your ID card safe do evil: 干坏事 evil doing make trouble => trouble making 纽卡斯尔 (英国港市) Newcastle n. 鉴别,识别 identify v. identify of sb. or sth. He can?t identify the person. identity: n. So far thearcheologists have been unable to discover her identity. 命名,确认 identification n. 女发言人 spokeswoman n. 三、【课文精析】 ====damaged, mutilated. 损坏,残缺不全 whiter than white

luckly / happily for them

固定搭配

Fortunately for them

team 组织

make a claim 提出索赔

feed sth. to

concern: 涉及到 —— is about

run a factory, run a company

I have a very good day. I have a good time

.

go horse-riding, go fishing, go hunting, go shopping

beautifully-cooked wallet: 用一种讽刺的口吻

turned to turned into become

who ----band manager

so long as: on condition that 表假设,只要

pay for: 为 ...付款

We paid 80 dollars for the dictionary.

on 强调对 21000 起索赔要求

pay off 还清,偿还

The couple have already paid their debts off.

pay back

1, 把钱归还回去 pay money back

2, 报仇,报复 pay somebody back

Lesson 8 A famous monastery

著名的修道院

一、【 Text 】课文

The Great St Bernard Pass connects Switzerland to Italy. At 2470 metres, it is the highest mountain pass in Europe. The famous monastery of St Bernard, which was founded in the eleventh century, lies about a mile away. For hundreds of years, St Bernard dogs have saved the lives of travellers crossing the dangerous Pass. These friendly dogs, which were first brought from Asia, were used as watch-dogs even in Roman times. Now that a tunnel has been built through the mountains, the Pass is less dangerous, but each year, the dogs are still sent out into the snow whenever a traveller is in difficulty. Despite the new tunnel, there are still a few people who rashly attempt to cross the Pass on foot

During the summer months, the monastery is very busy, for it is visited by thousands of people who cross the Pass in cars, As there are so many people about, the dogs have to be kept in a special enclosure. In winter, however, life at the monastery is quite different. The temperature drops to —30 and very few people attempt to cross the Pass. The monks Prefer winter to summer for they have more privacy. The dogs have greater freedom, too, for they are allowed to wander outside their enclosure. The only regular visitors to the monastery in winter are parties of skiers who go there at Christmas and Easter. These young people, who love the peace of the mountains, always receive a warm welcome at St. Bernard's monastery.

monastery n. 寺院,修道院

St. Bernard 圣伯纳德

pass n. 关隘

watchdog n. 看门狗

rashly adj. 莽撞地,冒失地

enclosure n. 围场,圈地

monk n. 和尚,僧侣

privacy n. 清静,隐居

skier n. 滑雪者

Easter n. 复活节

monastery n. 寺院,修道院

abbot: 修道院院长

convent nun: 修女

abbess: 女修道院院长

St. Bernard 圣伯纳德

pass n. 关隘

watchdog n. 看门狗

rashly adj. 莽撞地,冒失地

boldly adv.

enclosure n. 围场,圈地

monk n. 和尚,僧侣

privacy n. 清静,隐居

skier n. 滑雪者

Easter n. 复活节

at Easter, at Christmas, at Thanksgiving

## 三、【课文精析】

connects / Join Switzerland to Italy / link Switzerland with Italy

connect ... with:把...与某事联系在一起

I can?t connect the picture with my friend Mary.

Are you connected with the government?

be connected with 与 ... 有联系

at 2,473 metres: 介词短语修饰全句用于句首表示原因、条件或状态

At the age of 25, he is able.

At one point 65 metres, he is a little short.

限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句最大的区别

非限制性定语从句是对主句或主句中所出现的某个名词的补充说明和解释, 去掉对主句影响不大

限制性定语从句是主句当中不可缺少的一部分

Mr Smith was a famous person in American history.

Mr Smith, who died on July 17th at 84, was a famous person in American history.

There were very few passengers, who escaped without serious injury.

There were very few passengers who escaped without serious injury.

The taxi drivers, who knew about the traffic jam, took another road.

The taxi drivers who knew about the traffic jam took another road, and others who didn?t know about the traffic jam s till took this heavy road.

who 引导的非限制性定语从句主要指人做主语

指代事物在非限制性定语从句当中只能使用 which

He lent me a thousand dollars, which was exactly the sum I needed.

指代时间 when, 地点 where

He was left on the desert island, where he stayed for as long as therr weeks.

found 建立 set up establish

live----lives

which 指代 friend dogs

The panda, which was brought from China, was used as a symbol of friendship.

Now that : 既然

用做时间连接词时,后面通常跟完成式

Now that you have left university, you have to find a job.

用做原因连接词时,后面时态不限。

Now that you won't help me, I must do the job myself.

Now that you are grown-up, you must stop the children behave.

whenever, whoever, whatever wherever, whichever, however

no matter when / who / what / where / which / how

You can telephone me whenever you like.

Whichever day you come, we?ll be pleased to s

ee you.

Whenever you go, I?II follow you.

However busy you are, you nust spare some time to study English.

Despite 介词 —— in spite of

rashly 莽撞的 attempt to do sth. ----try to do sth.

there + be

There are still a few students studying English in the classroom.

in cars ---by car

about 到处,周围

Don?t litter waste paper about.

look about, go about, run about, wander about

keep : 使某人或某物处于某种状态,经常和介词短语、形容词、分词(现在分词和过去分词) 搭配连用,表示一种状态

keep him out, keep him in

Do keep the cat in the room.

表示逻辑的主谓关系 —— 现在分词 I?m sorry to keep you wating.

表示逻辑的动宾关系 —— 过去分词 The lamb was kept tight to a tree.

quite the opposite 恰恰相反

prefer sth. to sth.

Lesson 9 Flying cats 飞猫

一、【 Text 】课文

Cats never fail to fascinate human beings. They can be friendly and affectionate towards humans, but they lead mysterious lives of their own as well. they never become submissive like dogs and horses. As a result, humans have learned to respect feline independence. Most cats remain suspicious of humans all their lives.

One of the things that fascinaes us most about cats is the popular belief that they have nine lives. Apparently, there is a good deal of truth in thi sidea. A cat sability to survive falls is based on fact.

Recently the New York Animal medical Centre made a study of 132 cots over a period of five months. All these cats had one experience in common: they had fallen off high buildings, yet only eight of them died from shock or injuries. Of course, New York is the ideal place for such an interesting study, because there is no shortage of tall buildings. There are plenty of high-rise windowsills to fall, from! One cat ,Sabrina, fell 32 storeys, yet onl y suffered from a broken tooth. 'Cats behave like well- trained paratroopers, 'a doctor said. It seems that the further cats fall, the less they are likely to injure themselves. In a long drop, they reach speeds of 60 miles an hour and more. At high speeds, falling cats have time to relax. They stretch out their legs like flying squirrels. This increases their air-resistance and reduces the shock of impact when they hid the ground.

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

fascinate v. 迷住,吸引住

affectionate adj. 充满情深的,柔情的

mysterious adj. 神秘的,难以理解的

submissive adj. 服从的,顺从的

feline adj. 猫的

independence n. 独立,独立性

high-rise adj. 高层的

windowsill n. 窗槛

paratrooper n. 伞兵

squirrel n. 松鼠

air-resistance n. 空气阻力

impact n. 冲击力

fascinate v. 迷住,吸引住

vt. 主系表结构: be fascinated with 被 ...迷住了,被 ...吸引住了

He is fascinated with chess.

Are you fascinated with English.

like, love, be fond of

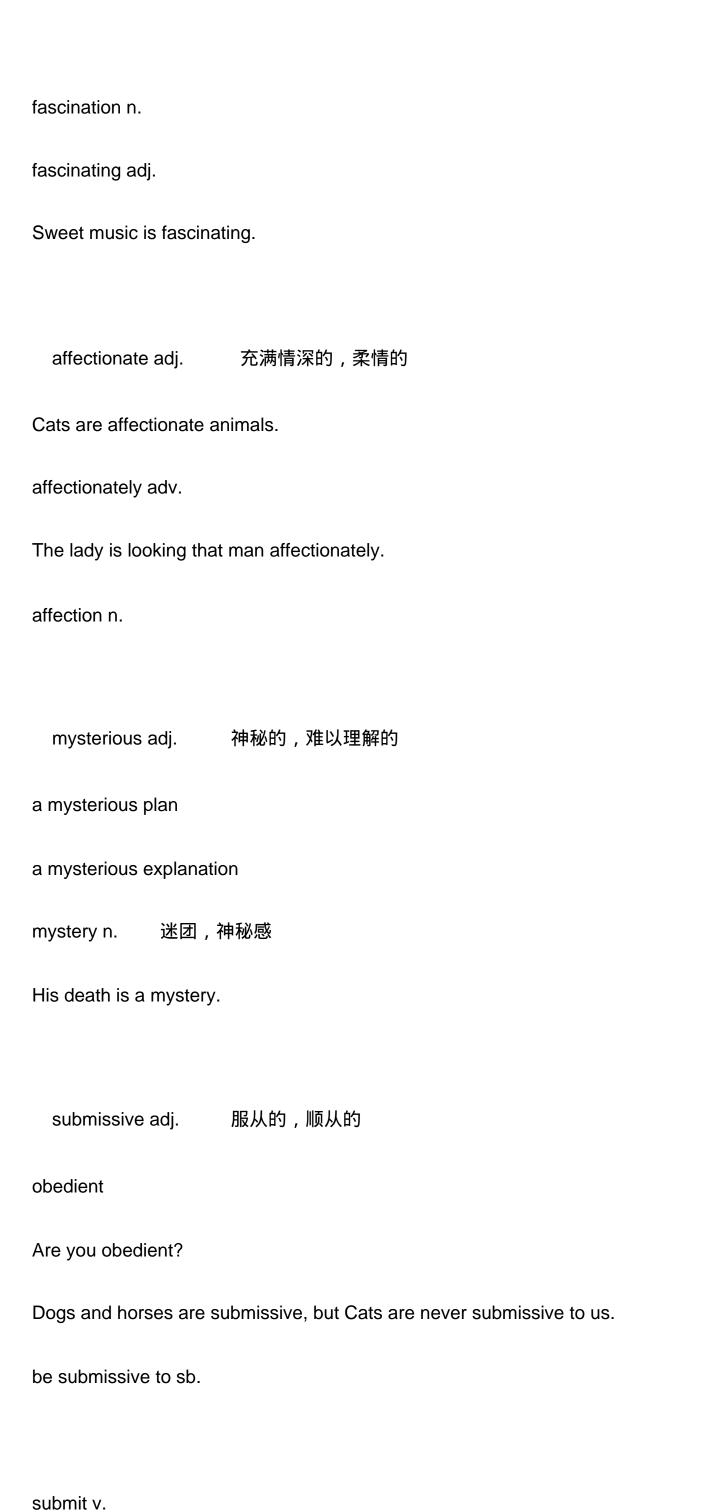
The boy is fond of football.

be crazy about: 着迷

be mad about

He is crazy / mad about music.

He is fascinated with music.



Submit oneself to sb. / sth. 屈服于,顺从于 submission n.

feline adj. 猫的

independence n. 独立,独立性

independent adj.

You have already grown up, you must be independent.

depend 依靠

You must depend on yourself.

depend, dependence

independence, independent

high-rise adj. 高层的

windowsill n. 窗槛

squirrel n. 松鼠

air-resistance n. 空气阻力

impact n. 冲击力

# 三、【课文精析】

nver fail to do 双重否定 = = 肯定

If you aks for help in the polite way, you never fail to succeed.

If you receive requests like this, you'll never fail to accept.

常用的双重否定结构(加强语气)

1. never fail to, can't fail to, don't fail to, 否定词 +fail to (语气较强烈)

2. 否定的形容词之前加以否定 unreasonable-> not unreasonable

Eg: What he said is not unreasonable.

It is quite common (not uncommon ) for us to make mistakes.

3 . not + without

Eg: You can't obtain english without working hard.

He doesn?t have any meal without meat.

4.no+not

Eg: There is no cat that doesn't like fish.

There is nothing that he can't do.

There is no rule that has no exception.

as well

as a result

have learned to: 学会了,习惯了

People have learned to expect that trains are punctual.

Children have learned to expect that their parents are very able.

be suspicious of sb. 对什么表示怀疑,存有戒心

One of the things that fascinaes us : that 引导定语从句

that 引导同位语从句

One of the things that fascinaes us most about planes is the popular fact that they are safe and fast.

truth, 不可数名词, a good deal of

apparently 显然,显而易见

It seems that...

Key sentence:

A cat?s ability to survive falls is based on fact.

survive v. fall v.&n.

be based on: 基于事实基础之上

base sth. on: 把某事加强在什么基础之上

We base the theory on the fact

The theory is based on fact.

make a study of sth : 对什么作出研究

in common = the same

fall off 坠落, 掉落

die from: 死于

死于疾病: die of illness / disease / hunger / thirst, 自然的死亡用 of

死于非自然原因: die from shock / injures / wound, 用 from

there is no shortage

shortage: 缺乏 = lack, 与 of 搭配, shortage / fack of

shortage of money led to the failure of the experiments.

suffer from: 遭受什么痛苦

A lot of people in the world are suffering from terrible disease.

behave like = act like

well-trained: 训练很好的, well-decorated: 装饰漂亮的

the further cats fall, the less

典型的 the more...the more... 句型,用定冠词 the 修饰形容词或副词的比较级

The harder you study English, the better you an learn it.

The more you eat, the fatter you will be.

be likely to do: 有可能如何,强调可能性

In cold winter, We are likely to catch a cold.

and more 甚至更多

stretch out 充分伸展

Lesson 10 The loss of the Titanic

"泰坦尼克 "号的沉没

一、【 Text 】课文

The great ship, Titanic, sailed for New York from Southampton on April 10th, 1912. She was carrying 1316 passengers and a crew of 89l. Even by modern standards, the 46,000 ton Titanic was a colossal ship. At that time, however, she was not only the largest ship that had ever been built, but was regarded as unsinkable, for she had sixteen watertight compartments. Even if two of these were flooded, she would still be able to float. The tragic sinking of this great liner will always be remembered, for she went down on her first voyage with heavy loss of life.

Four days after setting out, while the Titanic was sailing across the icy waters of the North Atlantic, a huge iceberg was suddenly spotted by a look-out. After the alarm had been given, the great ship turned sharply to avoid a direct collision. The Titanic turned just in time, narrowly missing the immense wall of ice which rose over 100 feet out of the water beside her. Suddenly, there was a slight trembling sound from below, and the captain went down to see what had happened. The noise had been so faint that no one thought that the ship had been damaged. Below, the captain realized to his horror that the Titanic was sinking rapidly, for five of her sixteen watertight compartments had already been flooded! The order to abandon ship was given and hundreds of people plunged into the icy water. As there were not enough life-boats for everybody, 1500 lives were lost.

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

Southampton n. 南安普敦(英国港市)

colossal adj. 庞大的

watertight adj. 不漏水的

compartment n. (轮船的)密封舱

flood v. 充满水

float v. 漂浮 , 飘浮

tragic adj. 悲惨的

liner n. 班船

voyage n. 航行

iceberg n. 冰山

lookout n. 瞭望员

collision n. 碰撞

narrowly adv. 刚刚,勉强地

miss v. 避开

slight adj. 轻微的

tremble v. 震颤

faint adj. 微弱的

horror n. 恐惧

abandon v. 抛弃

plunge v. 投入,跳入

lifeboat n. 救生船

Southampton n. 南安普敦(英国港市)

colossal adj. 庞大的

big, large, huge, great, vast, immense, enormous, giant, gigantic, tremendous, titanic

colossal: large in size

A ship Titanic was colossal.

a colossal monument; a colossal statue

big: 大的,重要的

You give me a big surprise.

He is a big person.

The box is big.

large: 体积大,数量大

an empty large box

a large number of people

great: 伟大

vast: 辽阔,广阔 vast desert

immense: immeasurable 不可测量的

an immense stadium, immense iceberg

enormous 重点突出数量、程度、体积;强调程度时,语意强于 big

Eg: He made a big success. / He made an enoumous success.

giant: 巨大的,高大的

a giant person 巨人 ; gigantic

tremendous: big, fast, powerful

The plane is traveling at tremendous speed.

titanic 用于修饰人和物,体积大、力量大

The ship is titanic.

huge: 强调体积大 a huge stone 数量巨大 a huge sum of money

watertight adj. 不漏水的

a watertight ship

watertight 引申为无懈可击的,毫无破绽的

watertight arguments 无懈可击的论点

watertight excuse 毫无破绽的借口

waterproof 防水的; waterproof watch 防水手表

waterproof coat 防水雨衣

compartment n. (轮船的)密封舱

flood v. 充满水

vt. & n.

vt. be filled with water; the ship is flooded.

The room was flooded with moonlight.

Our classroom was flooded with sunshine.

n. 洪水 , in flood 河水泛滥 ; 引申表示连续不断的

During the rains, the river is in flood.

in a flood of words 滔滔不绝的

She blamed her husband in a flood of words on seeing him.

float v. 漂浮 , 飘浮

drift

tragic adj. 悲惨的

unfoutunate; a tragic accident

miserable 苦难的 bitter 痛苦的

tragedy n. 悲剧 , 惨剧 in tragedy 以悲剧形式

The holiday ended in tragedy.

comedy 喜剧 comic 喜剧的,滑稽的 comical 古怪的,可笑的

liner n. 班船

voyage n. 航行

voyage 海上航行

flight 飞行

journey 长途行程

navigation 航海,航海术

The voyage is more than the old lady can bear.

iceberg n. 冰山

lookout n. 瞭望员

collision n. 碰撞

collide vi 碰撞,抚触

The plane collided with the mountain

crash v. 坠毁

It is said that there is an airplane that crashed in the mountains.

conflict vi. 和某事(某人)相抵触

My idea conflicts with yours.

clash vi. 相冲突

Eg: His wedding clashed with my examination, so I couldn?t go.

narrowly adv. 刚刚,勉强地

miss v. 避开

slight adj. 轻微的

tremble v. 震颤

tremble v. 有规律的、小幅度的抖动

Look, your hands are trembling, what?s wrong with you?

shiver v. 强调由于寒冷、惧怕而一连串地抖动

I found he?s shivering in a cold.

shudder vi. 强调全身的颤栗

The boy is shuddering, why? Because he was frightened.

faint adj. 微弱的

faint: weak

faint sound / weak sound; weak voice / faint voice

faint: unconscious 失去知觉

He has been faint for a long time.

slight 轻微的,微不足道的

a slight headache; a slight book

horror n. 恐惧

abandon v. 抛弃

abandon 因为某事而被迫放弃自己喜爱的事物

He abandoned his research because of the war.

desert 背弃,遗弃

desert the army; desert the duty; desert his family

plunge v. 投入,跳入

plunge: jump or rush suddenly and wildly

He got so angry that he plunge into the water.

When the ship Titanic sank in the ocean, a large number of people plunged into

jump: 侧重强调快速地跳

The boy is jumping up and down.

leap: 跳跃 He leapt out of the sleeping bad.

dive 跳水、潜水

lifeboat n. 救生船

## 三、【课文精析】

The great ship, Titanic, sailed for ...背景介绍

sail for 航海去往某处

set out (off) for 出发去往某处

leave for, head for, make for

Eg: He will set out for the Atlantic.

The plane is making for the airport.

We are heading for Canada.

Even by ... by : according to 表示依据

modern standards 现代的标准

by regulation 依据规则 ; by ruies 依据条例

by our estimate 根据我们的估计

by one?s looks / by one?s appearance 根据某人的长相

according to 依据 (事实、课文等客观存在的现实)

according to the fact 依据事实

according to the text 依据这篇课文

according to / i n accordance with

in accordance with 更加正式

in accordance with law 依据法律

in accordance with rules

at that time 在当时

not only ... but (also ) ..不仅 ...而且

be regarded as: be considered to be, be thought of as 把...看作为

口语中: regard sb. / sth. as + (n. / pron. / adj. / doing / done)

Eg: I regarded his idea as totally unacceptable.

We can?t regard the matter as settled.

for 表示原因

be able to 强调有能力

be remembered 被永远记住

go down : sink
on her first voyage     处女航, 首航
with heavy loss of life     损失惨重,造成大批人员的死亡
fo ur days after setting out our days after setting off
spotted: suddenly discovered by a look out
icy waters   水域,海域
to avoid …不定式表目的
just in time   很及时
missing 现在分词做状语,表示对主句的补充说明
narrowly 勉强地
which 指代 the immense wall of ice

从上方

...

from below

so ... that ...

从下方 from above

... so faint that no one thought that

to one?s horror 使某人感到惊讶

Key sentence:

five of her sixteen watertight compartments had been filled with water.

The order was given 命令被下达

to abandon ship 弃船,不定式做定语

As (because ) there we re not enough lifeboats ... 1,500 lives died.

the order was given. 命令被下达

to abandon ship 弃船 不定式做做定语

ability 能力

the ability to do sth.

order sb. to do sth.

be capable of doing sth. 强调有做某事的能力

capability of doing sth. 做某事的能力

Lesson 11 Not guilty 无罪

一、【 Text 】课文

Customs Officers are quite tolerant these days, but they can still stop you when you are going through the Green Channel and have nothing to declae. Even really honest people are often made to feel guilty. The hardened professional smuggler, on the other hand, is never troubled by such feelings, even if he has five hundred gold watches hidden in his suitcase. When I returned from abroad recently, a particularly officious young Customs Officer clearly regarded me as a smuggler.

'Have you anything to declare?' he asked, looking me in the eye.

'No,' I answered confidently.

'Would you mind unlocking this suitcase please ?'

'Not at all,' I answered.

The Officer went through the case with great care. All the things I had packed so carefully were soon in a dreadful mess. I felt sure I would never be able to close the case again. Suddenly, I saw the Officer's face light up. He had spotted a tiny bottle at the bottom of my case and he pounced on it with delight.

'Perfume, eh?' he asked sarcastically. 'You should have declared that. ' Perfume is not exempt from import duty.'

'But it isn't perfume,' I said.' It's hair-oil.' Then I added with a smile,' It's a strange mixture I make myself.'

As I expected, he did not believe me.

'Try it!' I said encouragingly.

The Officer unscrewed the cap and put the bottle to his nostrils. He was greeted by an unpleasant smell which convinced him that I was telling the truth. A few minutes later, I was able to hurry away with precious chalk-marks on my baggage.

\_ \ \ New words and expressions

】生词和短语

guilty adj. 犯罪的,违法的

tolerant adj. 宽容的

declare v. 申报

hardened adj. 有经验的

professional adj. 职业的,专业的

smuggler n. 走私者

officious adj. 爱管闲事的

confidently adj. 自信地

dreadful adj. 可怕的,一团糟的

pounce v. 猛抓 , 扑住

perfume n. 香水

sarcastically adv. 讽刺地

exempt adj. 被免除的

duty n. 税

gel n. 凝胶

mixture n. 混合物

unscrew v. 拧开

nostril n. 鼻孔

chalk n. 粉笔

baggage n. 行李

guilty adj. 犯罪的,违法的

He felt guilty when he did what he shouldn?t have done.

He said that with a guilty smile.

guilt n.

guiltily a.

反义词: innocent, innocence n.

tolerant adj. 宽容的

a tolerant person must be easy going.

```
tolerance n.
tolerate vt.
tolerable adj.
                可以忍受的,说得过去的
              申报
  declare v.
 hardened adj.
                   有经验的
(侧重于老练的)
a hardened player
a hardened thief
experienced (
               侧重于有经验的 )
an experienced teacher
                     职业的,专业的
 professional adj.
                         选手
a professional player
 smuggler n.
                走私者
 officious adj.
                 爱管闲事的
a lot of old ladies are officious.
officiously adv.
officiousness n.
officious civil servant
                        好管闲事的公务员
an officious police officer
```

tolerantly ad.

official 官方的,官员的,正式的

An official inquiry will be made into this matter.

对此事将进行一次官方调查

confidently adj. 自信地

He went to do the work confidently.

= with confidence 充满信心的

confident adj.

confidence n.

have confidence 有信心

gain confidence 获得信心

in confidence 悄悄的,秘密的 = secretly

take sb. into one?s confidence 以某人为心腹

Eg: The boss take his secretary into his confidence.

dreadful adj. 可怕的,一团糟的

= frightful (表示胆怯的,恐惧的)

dreadful ( 侧重于可怕的,乱七八糟的 )

pounce v. 猛抓 , 扑住

perfume n. 香水

fragrance: (抽象名词) 芬芳,芳香

sarcastically adv. 讽刺地

exempt adj. 被免除的

duty n. 税

Customs Duty: 关税

Stamp duty 印花税

duty free 免税的

同义词 tax income tax 所得税

gel n. 凝胶

mixture n. 混合物

mix v. mix sth. with

unscrew v. 拧开

nostril n. 鼻孔

chalk n. 粉笔

baggage n. 行李

同义词 luggage

## 三、【课文精析】

quite tolerant

我们在运用形容词、动词时,往往需要用副词来强调。

表示"真正的" really

a really officious person

强调"特别,尤其是" particularly

强调 "绝对的 " absolutely

强调"完全的,彻底的 " completely, entirely, fully, tho roughly

fairly---- 强调 "一般般 "

very ---- 语气程度强烈 "非常 "

rather---- 语意程度接近 fairly, 注意修饰形容词和副词,特别是形容词同时修饰名词时,不定 冠词的位置。

A fairly good book.

A rather good book / Rather a good book

rather too

quite---- ~ right / wrong / mistaken / sure

绝对不能用 very 替代。

Even really honest peo ple ...

a particularly officious young Customs Officer

the Green Channel = the Custom Office

are made to feel guilty

madk, have, let 及感官性动词 see, hear, notice, feel 用于主动语态,符合宾语不定式的 to 符号应该省略。但这种结构改成被动式时,不定式符号必须还原。

We heard someone come up the stairs.

Someone was heard to come up the stairs.

(On the one hand ..., ) on the other hand

On the one hand we could stay and help you, but on the other hand it might be better if you went to help him instead.

hidden in his suitcase

过去分词短语作定语,修饰 watches.

even if / though he has five hundred gold watches hidden in his suitcase.

looking me in the eye: 两眼直盯盯的注视着我

look sb. in the face, stare sb. in the eye = look directly at sb.

Not one of the men dared look him in the eye.

The Officer went through the case with great care. = The Officer examined the case carefully.

with great care---- 强调相当的仔细

in a mess :乱作一团

介词 in 和名词搭配,表示一种状态

秩序井然: in good order

身体健康: in good health

心情好: in a good mood

脾气好: in a good temper

light up: 喜气洋洋,容光焕发

Eg: Masha's face lit up when she saw her old friend.

His face lighted up at the small triumph.

Tom really lighted up when he saw the new biccycle.

light 有两种过去分词,过去式形式: lit, lighted

但是如果运用过去分词作定语,表示被点燃的。要用 lighted

一只被点燃的雪茄: a lighted cigar

点燃的火炬: a lighted stick.

介词短语 - - with del ight "欣喜若狂的"

with 和抽象名词搭配,表示内心充满了一种感情

自信地: with confidence

细心地: with care

骄傲的: with pride

欣喜若狂的: with delight

惊讶的: with surprise

pounce on: 向 ...猛扑过去,对 ...大做文章

Eg: The policeman pounced on the thief.

Don't pounce on my mistake.

should have 和过去分词搭配,表示本应该做某事却没有做,具有谴责性的味道。

You should have arrived here five minutes earlier.

You should have told me about it.

本不应该做某事: shouldn?t have done

exempt: 免除的,被免除的 be~from

Drinks are not exempt from import duty.

as---- 关系代词, 引导非限制性定语从句。他所指代的内容就是主句的整个句子的含义。

As Brian pointed out, (正如 ...所指出的)

正如我很快得知的: as sb. mentioned

关系代词 as 和 which 的区别:

as 所引导 的非限制性定语从句,可用在主句之前

which 引导的非限制性定语从句,只能用在主句之后。

副词形式: encouragingly

He was greeted by an unpleasant smell

greet: 问候,向 ...致意;觉察到 , 呈现在 ...眼前,在 ...耳边

I woke up and was greeted by a bird?s song.

Inside the room adreadful mess greeted us.

When he went into the kitchen, a smell greeted him.

Lesson 12 Life on a desert island

荒岛生活

一、【 Text 】课文

Most of us have formed an unrealistic picture of life on a desert island. We sometimes imagine a desert island to be a sort of paradise where the sun always shines. Life there is simple and good. Ripe fruit falls from the trees and you never have to work. The other side of the picture is quite the opposite. Life on a desert island is wretched. You either starve to death or live like Robinson Crusoe, waiting for a boat which never comes. Perhaps there is an element of truth in both these pictures, but few of us have had the opportunity to find out.

Two men who recently spent five days on a coral island wished they had stayed there longer. They were taking a badly damaged boat from the Virgin Islands to Miami to have it repaired. During the journey, their boat began to sink. They quickly loaded a small rubber dinghy with food, matches, and tins of beer and rowed for a few miles across the Caribbean until they arrived at a tiny coral island. There were hardly any trees on the island and there was no water, but this did not prove to be a problem. The men collected rain-water in the rubber dinghy. As they had brought a spear gun with them, they had plenty to eat. They caught lobster and fish every day, and, as one of them put it 'ate like kings'. When a passing tanker rescued them five days later, both men were genuinely sorry that they had to leave.

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

desert island 荒岛

unrealistic adj. 不真实的

Paradise n. 天堂,乐土

wretched adj. 可怜的,艰苦的

Starve v. 挨饿

element n. 成分

opportunity n. 机会

coral n. 珊瑚

Virgin Islands 维尔京群岛

Miami n. 迈阿密 (美国最南的城市)

dinghy n. 救生筏,小船

Caribbean n. 加勒比海

spear gun 捕鱼枪

lobster n. 龙虾

tanker n. 油轮

genuinely adv. 由衷地

#### Robinson Crusoe 鲁滨逊?克鲁索 (小说《鲁滨逊漂流记》主人公)

desert island 荒岛

desert: 沙漠

v. 背弃, 遗弃

dessert: 甜点

unrealistic adj. 不真实的

paradise n. 天堂,乐土

a lot of people imagine the USA as their paradise.

heaven: 天堂,天国,也指死亡

wretched adj. 可怜的,艰苦的

miserable

lead a wretched / miserable / terrible life

starve v. 挨饿

starve to death

element n. 成分

opportunity n. 机会

golden opportunity 绝佳的机会

opportunity knocks only once 千载难逢的机会

chance 表机会时可以与 opportunity 互换,表可能性时则不可

I had chance / opportunity of visiting Paris.

There is a chance that I will see him.

The chances are that he will be elected the president.

The chances are that he will past his examination next week.

+ of, to

He had not opportunity to see her.

oral n. 珊瑚

irgin Islands 维尔京群岛

Miami n. 迈阿密 (美国最南的城市)

dinghy n. 数生筏,小船

Caribbean n. 加勒比海

spear gun 捕鱼枪

lobster n. 龙虾

tanker n. 油轮

genuinely adv. 由衷地

He is genuinely thankful to me.

adj. genuine

n. genuineness

Robinson Crusoe 鲁滨逊?克鲁索 (小说《鲁滨逊漂流记》主人公)

### 三、【课文精析】

Key sentence:

A large number of people have formed an unrealistic picture of the job.

imagine sth. to be / imagine sth. as

Some people imagine flying to be more dangerous than traveling by train.

A large number people imagin the USA as their paradise.

quite the opposite: 恰恰相反

either ... or ...

Either you or I am going to the party. 谓语动词和最接近的主语保持一致。

Either coming or go out don?t stand on the doorway. 要么进来,要么出去,不要站在门口。

An element of truth: a bit of truth

Optimistic: 乐观的

Pessimistic: 消极的,悲观的

Wish 做谓语动词, 其后的宾语从句中要使用虚拟语气; 虚拟语气的结构形式取决于所表达的实际情况:

1. 如果表达对现在的遗憾或与现在相反的情况, that 从句中的动词要采用过去时, be 动词要用were

2. 如果表达对过去的遗憾或与过去相反的情况, that /	从句中的动词要采用过去完成时	
I wish I hadn?t spent so much money.		
I wish that you had written to him.		
3. 如果表达与将来事实相反或将来不可能实现的心愿, 态动词的过去时	that 从句中要使用 would, could 🧍	等情
I wish that I could go abroad tomorrow.		
I wish that you could come here tomorrow.		
if only 要比 wish 更富有戏剧性和感情色彩		
If only the weather would change.		
I wish the weather would change.		
We wish that we knew where to look for him.		
If only we knew to look for him.		
If only we could have gone to the party.		
If only you hadn?t sa id that.		
If only you would come here tomorrow.		
Have sth. Repaired		
load with 把 装载到上		

I wish you could drive a car.

Eg: The workers are loading the truck with goods.

Unload:

卸

hardly any: very little / few

Eg: Hardly anybody likes him becaues he is so rude.

You hardly eat anything, what's wrong?

prove to be===turn out to be

put: express

If only we could have stayed on the desert island a little bit longer.

Lesson 13 ,lt?s only me?

是我,别害怕

一、【 Text 】课文

After her husband had gone to work, Mrs Richards sent her children to school and went upstairs to her bedroom. She was too excited to do any housework that morning, for in the evening she would be going to a fancy dress party with her husband. She intended to dress up as a ghost and as she had made her costume the night before, she was impatient to try it on. Though the costume consisted only of a sheet, it was very effective. After putting it on, Mrs Richards went downstairs. She wanted to find out whether it would be comfortable to wear.

Just as Mrs Richards was entering the dining-room, there was a knock on the front door. She knew that it must be the baker. She had todd him to come straight in if ever she failed to open the door and to leave the bread on the kitchen table. Not wanting to frighten the poor man, Mrs Richards quickly hid in the small store-room under the stairs. She heard the front door open and heavy footsteps in the hall. Suddenly the door of the store-room was opened and a man entered. Mrs Richards realized that it must be the man from the Electricity Board who had come to read the meter. She tried to explain the situation, saying' It's only me', but it was too late. The man let out a cry and jumped back several paces. When Mrs Richards walked towards him, he fled, slamming the door behind him.

New words and expressions

】 生词和短语

n. 化装服 costume

consist v. 由... 组成

sheet n. 被单

effective adj. 有明显效果的,有作用的

comfortable adj. 舒适的

streroom n. 储藏室

electricity n. 电

metre n. 电表

pace n. 一步

flee v. 逃走

slam v. 砰地关上

costume n. 化装服

costume ball 化妆舞会

costume party

fancy (dress ) party

suit 西服,西装

dress 裙子

consist v. 由... 组成

consist of-- 由 . .组成(表示被动概念) ==be made up of ==comprise ==be composed of(强调由什么成分所构成 )

Eg: Our class consist of 100 students.

The United Kingdom consists of G.B. and Northern Ireland.

The house consists of six rooms.

be composed of----

Water is composed of oxygen and hydrogen.

constitute v.---- 由部分构成整体

The committee consists of 10 members. = Ten members constitute the committee.

sheet n. 被单

effective adj. 有明显效果的,有作用的

The costume is quite effective.

His words was effective.

influential: 有潜移默化影响力的

What our parents do is influential to children.

efficacious: (医药)有效的,灵验的

The drug is efficacious.

fruitful: 有成效的

Their experiment is fruitful.

comfortable adj. 舒适的

反义词: uncomfortable

comfort n. 舒适 adj. 安慰

discomfort n. 不舒适

In spite of discomforts he is determined to stay here.

streroom n. 储藏室

electricity n. 电

metre n. 电表

pace n. 一步

flee (fled, fled ) v. 逃走

flee:(vt.)(vi.)( 总称)泛泛强调逃离危险的境地

Eg: The people fled in panic when the bull got loose.

escape: 逃出监狱,逃出牢笼

vt. 逃掉,逃出

Eg: He was able to escape from the house.

I am sorry your name escaped me. 很抱歉, 我忘记你的名字了。

They tried to escape death.

slam v. 砰地关上

slam the door.

同义词: bang

## 三、【课文精析】

too ... to ...太... 而不能

不定式 to, 在大部分情况下, 表示否定概念。

not / never too ... to: 并不太 ... 所以能够

One is never too old to learn. 活到老,学到老

The question is not too difficult for me to answer.

如果在副词 too 前发现修饰语 all, but only, 不定式 to 的概念也是肯定的

Eg: They are all too satisfied to work with you. 他们都非常满意很想和你一起工作

I am only too glad to have someone to speak to. 我太高兴了,很想找个人说话

He was but too eager to get home. 他太急于要回家了。

intended to = mean to: 有什么打算,意图

dress up as : 化妆成为

the night before: 前一个晚上(以过去的某一个时间为基准点)

last night: 昨天晚上(以现在为基准点)

The night before she got everythinbg ready.

She was impatient (eager, anxious ) to try it on.

be impatient to do sth: 急于要做某事,迫不及待

= eager, anxious, hungry, thirsty, despereat, can?t wait ( □ )

更焦急的情况用 desperate( be desperate to do sth), 口语中用 can't

wait.(can't wait to do sth)

try on : 试穿

After putting it on: 穿上以后

动词不定式 to wear, 用来修饰说明 comfortable, 作它的状语

The book is difficult to read. The dress is easy to wash. Your handwriting is easy to recognize. it would be comfortable (for her ) to wear. It is easy for me to read 主动形式 ———— 表达被动概念 The music is sweet to hear. The machine needs repairing "需要 …… " 被动概念 ,用 need,want 和动名词形式直接搭配 Eg: The dictionary is worth buying. The book is worth reading. The house is under construction The puma is under control. The problem is under discussion. The thief is under arrest. 介词 under 可以表达被动的意味 Eg: The airport came into use again. 不及物动词短语 came into use: Our time has already gone to waste. (浪费掉,付诸东流) 被尊敬的人 ) She is a respectable person. ( 形容词后缀,跟在动词后表达 "能够被 ...的 " -able

This is a returnable bottle.

"由…所组成":consist of, comprise 本身表达被动概念,结构形式为主动。

there was a knock on the front door: 人有敲门

come in: 进来

straight : 直接地,径直地

if ever-- -ever 用语条件句,表示任何时候,任何场合 ==when ever

Eg: If ever you see George give him my best regards.

When ever he is in trouble I'll be on the spot.

Not wanting--- - 分词的否定结构形式 , 做原因状语。 多用于句首 , 也可插入句中 , 主谓之间。

Eg: Not wanting to make her nervous, the doctor didn?t fully explain the seriousness of her condition.

= The doctor, not wanting to make her nervous, didn?t fully explain the seriousness of her condition.

read the metre: 查电表

saying- -- 现在分词做伴随状语

let out a cry 大叫了一声 ===utter / give a cry.

let out 发出 ==give

shout 高呼,高喊,有目的的

shout to sb 对某人高声喊

shout at sb 对某人大喊大叫

Lesson 14 A noble gangster 贵族歹徒

#### 一、【 Text 】课文

There was a time when the owners of shop and businesses in Chicago had to pay large sums of money to gangsters in return for 'protection'. If the money was not paid promptly, the gangsters would quickly put a man out of business by destroying his shop. Obtaining 'protechon money' is not a modern crime. As long ago as the fourteenth century, an Englishman, Sir John Hawkwood, made the remarkable discovery that people would rather pay large sums of money than have their life work destroyed by gangsters.

Six hundred years ago, Sir John Hawkwood arrived in Italy with a band of soldiers and settled near Florence. He soon made a name for himself and came to be known to the Italians as Giovanni Acuto. Whenever the Italian city-states were at war with each other, Hawkwood used to hire his soldiers to princes who were willing to pay the high price he demanded. In times of peace, when business was bad, Hawkwood and his men would march into a city-state and, after burning down a few farms, would offer to go away if protection money was paid to them. Hawkwood made large sums of money in this way. In spite of this, the Italians regarded him as a sort of hero. When he died at the age of eighty, the Florentines gave him a state funeral and had a picture painted which was dedicated to the memory of 'the most valiant soldier and most notable leader, Signor Giovanni Haukodue'.

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

gangster n. 歹徒,强盗

Chicago n. 芝加哥 (美国城市)

protection n. 保护

promptly adv. 准时地

destroy v. 毁掉;消灭

remarkable adj. 不寻常的

band n. 帮,团伙

Florence n. 佛罗伦萨 (意大利城市)

city-state n. (古代)城邦

hire v. 租出,雇给

prince n. 君主,诸侯

Florentine n. 佛罗伦萨人

funeral n. 葬礼

dedicate v. 奉献,题献给

memory n. 纪念

valiant adj. 英勇的

gangster n. 歹徒,强盗

a band of gangsters 一伙强盗

robber 抢劫犯,抢劫者;

bandit 强盗,土匪

brigand (书面用语 )强盗,土匪,盗贼,草寇

hooligan 流氓,不良分子

hoodlum (口语)罪犯,恶汉

rascal (口语)淘气,捣蛋鬼

Chicago n. 芝加哥 (美国城市)

protection n. 保护

protection money 保护费

protect v. protect from

We must protect our eyes from the sunshine.

protective adj. 保护的

protector n. 保护者

protege n. 被保护者

promptly adv. 准时地

I give him a ring and he call me back promptly.

He was so sleepy that he went to sleep promptly.

on time 准时 / in time 及时

punctually adv. 守时地

destroy v. 毁掉;消灭

destroy 强调毁灭,消灭,完全的摧毁

Eg: The earthquake destroyed the city. / You destroyed his dream.

damage 强受损程度不很严重,可以被修复

break 强调弄坏,弄断

Two of the strings were broken.

spoil 强调把事情搅和了

Eg: spoil the party. / spoil the holiday

remarkable adj. 不寻常的

remarkable adj.: unusual; uncomon; extraordinary

a remarkable event 不同寻常的事件

an extraordinary event

outstanding adj. 突出的, 杰出的,卓越的

Eg: Our headmaster is an outstanding youth.

distinguished adj. 杰出的,卓越的,不同非凡的

eminent adj. 显赫的,杰出的,有名的,优良的

Eg:a distinguished physicist; an eminent surgeon; an eminent judge; a distinguished lawyer

以上都可以用来修饰那些在严肃领域的人,比如科学,医学等等

well-know adj. 强调众所周知的

famous adj. 因卓越的贡献和成绩而流芳百世的

Eg: She is well-known in the musical world. / This is well-known fact.

He is a famous moviestar. / Luxun is famous for his articles.

notorious adj. 臭名昭著的,臭名远扬的; be famous for bad things

infarmous adj. 声名狼藉的 (语气较弱)

rnowned adj. 某人或某事以其独特的品质、个性而闻名

Eg: Hangzhou is renowned for its beautiful...

band n. 帮,团伙

a band of robbers 一伙强盗

mob n. 表示贬义色彩的团伙、帮派

a mob of hooligans 一伙流氓

gang n. 一伙 a gang of thieves

nest n. 窝; a nest of bandits

pack n. 团伙、帮派; a pack of hoodlums

Florence n. 佛罗伦萨(意大利城市)

city-state n. (古代)城邦

hire v. 租出,雇给

hire; rent; let; employ

hire out; rent out 租给

Eg: Does this firm hire out cars? 这家公司出租汽车吗?

rent out 租给,雇给:主要强调出租房屋

Eg: He rent out his house to a tourist.

let 出租房屋: let his house / please let your house to me

hire from/ rent from 租进来

Eg: He hired a car from us. / I rent a room form Mrs. Johnson.

hire 指短期雇佣体力劳动者

employ 指长期雇佣或聘请脑力劳动者

We employed her as our advisor.

The factory employed 500 workers.

He hired two helpers. 他雇佣了两个临时帮手。

prince n. 君主,诸侯

Florentine n. 佛罗伦萨人

funeral n. 葬礼

dedicate v. 奉献,题献给

dedicate to 奉献给 …… 比 devote 更为正式而庄重

Eg:He dedicated his first book to his mother.

I devote my time to helping my students.

He dedicates his life to his motherland.

He dedicated his life to science.

put sb of business 使某人失业

put sb/sth out of 使某人失去 ......

Eg: You are putting me out of patience.

put it out of your mind 忘记这件事情吧 != forget it.

valiant adj. 英勇的

brave adj. 勇敢的

The boy is brave.

During war, soldiers are valiant.

fearless adj. 大无畏的,无所畏惧的

We are fearless in time of danger.

courageous adj. 有胆量的,有勇气的

memory n. 纪念

You have a good memory.

in memory of / to the memory of

Eg: if my memory serves me well, you?re Tom.

如果我没记错的话,你是 Tom。

#### 三、【课文精析】

向某人付大笔大笔的费用 pay large sums of money to sb. 目的是为了换取 ... 作为对 ... 的回报 in return for Eg: He gave me some books in return for my help. when 引导状语从句修饰 time Eg: There was a time when mini skirt was in fashion. innediately promptly: 使某人失业 put a man out out of business: 使某人失去 ...... put sb. / sth. out of ... Eg: You are putting me out of patience. You have already put everything out of order. put it out of your mind 忘记这件事情吧 Obtaining... obtaining: getting

as long ago as 追溯回到: dating back to / date from		
Eg.: I knew Jane as long ago as the year 1980.		
Key sentence:		
John hawkwood?s discovery was quite remarkable.		
make the remarkable discovery 做出不同寻常的发现		
would rather do sth than do sth 宁愿而不		
Eg.: He would rather die than surrender.		
I would rather play tennis than swim.		
==woul d prefer to do than do		
==would prefer doing to doing		
Eg.: He would prefer to die than surrender.		
He would prefer dying to surrendering.		
would rather:   sooner + that  从句 (过去式)		
Eg: I would rather that you were not here.       我宁愿你不在这儿。		
Eg: I would rather that I didn't see you.       我宁愿没见到你。		
life work 毕生的事业		
Eg.: I want to have the tree cut down.		
Six hundred years ago		
a band of一伙		

settled near Florence 定居在 Florence 附近

make a name for himself ===become famous

Eg.: They soon made quite a name for themselves as pop singers.

come to / get to 渐渐的

come to be known 渐渐的被人所熟知

Eg.: I come to be known to my students.

I got to know him.

whenever 无论什么时候

at war 交战 at war with 与 ...... 交战

hire 表示出租

who 指代 prince

he demanded: Hawkwood demanded

in times of peace 在和平期间

in times of .在.....期间

march into 大踏步行军

would offer to do === would promise to do

burn down 烧毁 / burn up 烧光 / burn out 烧空

Eg.: the house was burned out only...

in spite of this 尽管如此

give sb. a state funeral 给某人举行国葬

Lesson 15 Fifty pence worth of trouble

五十便士的麻烦

一、【 Text 】课文

Children always appreciate small gifts of money. Father, of course, provides a regular supply of pocket-money, but uncles and aunts are always a source of extra income. With some children, small sums go a long way. If sixpences are not exchanged for sweets, they rattle for months inside money-boxes. Only very thrifty children manage to fill up a money-box. For most of them, sixpence is a small price to pay for a satisfying bar of chocolate.

My nephew, George, has a money-box but it is always empty. Very few of the sixpences I have given him have found their way there. I gave him sixpence yesterday and advised him to save it. Instead, he bought himself sixpence worth of trouble. On his way to the sweet shop, he dropped his sixpence and it rolled along the pavement and then disappeared down a drain. George took off his jacket, rolled up his sleeves and pushed his right arm through the drain cover. He could not find his sixpence anywhere, and what is more, he could not get his arm out. A crowd of people gathered round him and a lady rubbed his arm with soap and butter, but George was firmly stuck. The fire-brigade was called and two firemen freed George using a special type of grease. George was not too upset by his experience because the lady who owns the sweet shop heard about his troubles and rewarded him with a large box of chocolates.

appreciate v. 欣赏,感激

pocket money 零用钱

rattle v. 格格作响

thrifty adj. 节俭的

nephew n. 侄子,外甥

bounce v. 弹起,跳起

pavement n. 人行道

stick (stuck, stuck) v. 卡住,夹住,不能再动

brigade n. 旅, (消防)队

grease n. 润滑油

appreciate v. 欣赏,感激

Eg.: The poem is too difficult for me to appreciate.

I appreciate your help. = be thankful / grateful to sb.

pocket money 零用钱

beer money: 留给丈夫的零花钱

mad money: 妇子留作应急之用的私房钱

green money: 美金

soft / folding money: 纸币,钞票

hard money: 硬币

rattle v. 格格作响

```
thrifty adj.
             节俭的
同义词: economical
             侄子,外甥
 nephew n.
            弹起 , 跳起
 bounce v.
The coin was bounced.
同义词: jump( 跳跃), leap( 跃), hop( 单足跳 ), spring( 弹跳; n. 弹簧), skip( 跳跃;
略过)
               人行道
 pavement n.
                    卡住,夹住,不能再动
 stick (stuck, stuck) v.
stick: 不能跳跃,卡住;坚持,粘贴
Eg.: You must stick to your idea.
Stick the stamp on the envelop.
stick with:
          忠实于 ..... ( =be faithful to
                                       )
                   他的胳膊被卡住了。
His arm was stuck.
                  (消防)队
 brigade n.
             旅,
fire brigade:
             消防队
= fire department
```

= fire station

grease n.

润滑油

# 三、【课文精析】

Key sentence:	
Children always appreciate small gifts of money.	孩子们总是喜欢得到些零花钱。
Key sentence:	
Husbands always appreciate small gifts of beer money.	
provide a regular supply of定期地提供	
provide sth. for sb./ provide sb. with sth. 为某人提供	<b>共某物品</b>
a source of extra income	
small gifts of money	
pocket money	
extra income	
go a long way 可以买很多东西,维持很久	
Eg: The money we have will go a long way.	
go a long way towards: 对大有帮助	
Eg: This will go a long way towards overcoming the difficulty.	
With frugal housewives, they made their small income go a long v	vay.
介词 With 和 For 的区别:"对于来说"	

介词 for---- "关于,对于 ……来说,考虑到 ……的事实 "

Eg.: The weather is quite warm for November.

For him, this will be an entirely new hobby.

介词 with---- "在某一方面"(多用于二者的比较)

Eg.: With some people, pleasure is more important than work.

Some people may accept that excuse, but it won?t work with me.

pence: 便士 (penny 便士的复数; pennies )

a fifty pence: 一个五十便士的硬币

a fifty penies: 五十个一便士的硬币

rattle: 叮当作响 ==tinkle

roar: 呼啸(重点突出老虎、狮子等大动物的鸣叫声)

shout at: 大喊大叫 = bark at

he is grunting. 咕哝的,哼哼唧唧的

slam: 砰的一声

fill up: 装满

1 . up ---- 表示方向

to---- 目的地、说话者所在处

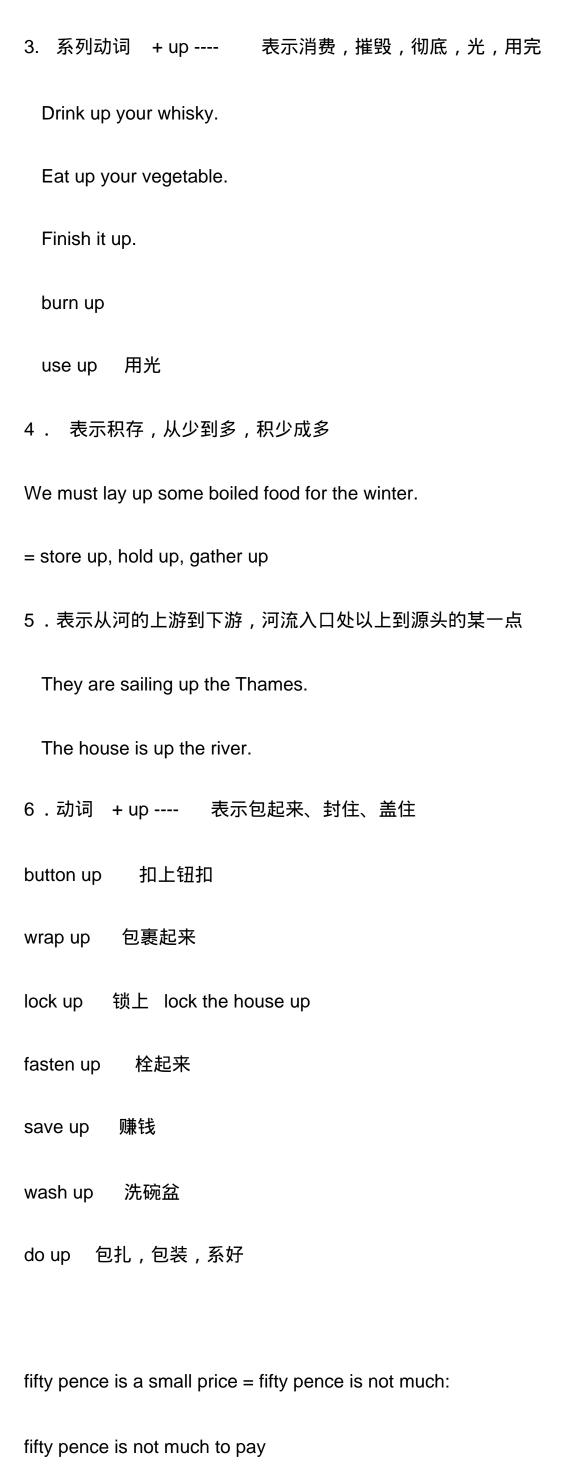
up to ---- 表示到达目的地

towards---- 表示朝某个方向

2.表示沿着,走向更远的地方,侧重强调距离更远了

They walked up the street.

The children run up the garden path to greet their father.



装满

a small price = not much money: 并不是很多

For him, two thousand dollars is a small price to pay for it.

For me, five haudred yuan is not a small price to pay for a bicycle.

find their way there = reach 抵达,到达, 找到自己的去处

Rivers find their way to the sea.

How did such a foolish statement find its way into print.

这样愚蠢的话怎么会印出来

呢。

All my books have already found their way there.

advise: 建议

advise sb. to do sth.: 说服某人做某事(失败的结果)

persuade sb. to do sth.: 说服某人做某事(成功的结果)

instead :相反的是

fifty pence worth of trouble: 五十便士的麻烦

系列的动词构成平行结构: take off, rolled up, push

roll vi. 滚动; vt. 滚动

vi. The pencil rolled under the table.

vt. He rolled the ball towards the puppy.

roll up: 卷起,挽起

We will need to roll up the carpet.

what 引导的插入语

what is more important 更重要的是

what is worse 更糟糕的是

what is more 甚者

what is rare 更罕见的是

Eg.: He went to the meeting, and what was worse, insist on speaking.

gather round 聚在周围

rubbed his arm with sth. .... 用...... 涂抹

firmly: 坚定的,稳固的(加强语气)

using-- -- 现在分词做状语,强调一种方式

reward ... with: 用... 来奖赏某人

Lesson 16 Mary had a little lamb

玛丽有一头小羔羊

一、【 Text 】课文

Mary and her husband Dimitri lived in the tiny village of Perachora in southern Greece. One of Mary's prize possessions was a little white lamb which her husband had given her. She kept it tied to a tree in a field during the day and went to fetch it every evening. One evening, however, the lamb was missing. The rope had been cut, so it was obvious that the lamb had been stolen.

When Dimitri came in from the fields, His wife told him what had happened. Dimitri at once set out to find the thief. He knew it would not prove difficult in such a small village. After telling several of his friends about the theft, Dimitri found out that his neighbour, Aleko, had suddenly acquired a new lamb. Dimitri immediately went to Aleko's house and angrily accused him of stealing the lamb. He told him he had better return it or he would call the police. Aleko denied taking it and led Dimitri into his back-yard. It was true that he had just bought a lamb, he explained, but his lamb was black. Ashamed of having acted so rashly, Dimitri apologized to Aleko for having accused him. While they were talking it began to rain and Dimitri stayed in Aleko's house until the rain stopped. When he went outside half an hour later, he was astonished to find that the little black lamb was almost white. Its wool, which had been dyed black, had been washed clean by the rain!

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

prize adj. 珍贵的,宝贵的

tie v. 拴,系

theft n. 偷盗案

accuse v. 指控

deny v. 否认

ashamed adj. 感到羞耻,惭愧

apologize v. 道歉

dye v. 染

prize adj. 珍贵的,宝贵的

可以表示 "珍贵的,宝贵的 "的词包括: prize , valuable , preclous, cherishable , dear

Eg.: Mary has got a prize lamb.

The cat is prize to the old lady.

tie v. 拴,系

tie sth to

1.把 ...拴在 ...上

Eg: I tie the dog to a tree

2.与...有联系

Eg: He is tied to his family

3.n. 领带;关系(强调血缘关系)

theft n. 偷盗行为,偷盗案

Eg.: He reports the theft to the police.

accuse v. 指控

accuse sb of doing sth 因为某事指控某人 ,指控某人做了某事

Eg.: He acciused his neighbour of stealing his bicycle.

= charge sb with doing sth

accuse 比 charge 语意弱: accuse 强调 "严厉的指责" charge 强调 "控告"

deny v. 否认

deny doing sth. 否认做了某事

He denied stealing the lamb.

He denied the truth.

百依百顺 deny sb. nothing Eg: He denies his wife nothing 克制自己 deny oneself: Eg: On some occasions we must deny ourselves. 感到羞耻,惭愧 ashamed adj. be ashamed of He is ashamed of being a dustman. 可耻的 shameful: The theft is shameful. 无耻的 shameless: The thief is a shameless person. apologize v. 道歉 apologize to sb. (for sth.) apology n. dye v. Dye the cloth black.

# 三、【课文精析】

in the tiny village of ... 在一个小小的山村

in the big city of Beijing

in the beautiful city of Paris

possession: 所有物

Eg: What I possess is valuable/ My possessions are valuable.

我所拥有的一切都很值

钱。

belonging: 随身携带物(通常是用复数形式)

keep: 使...... 处于某种状态

keep 后的复合宾语(宾语补足语)可以是形容词、介词短语、分词

keep 和过去分词搭配做宾语补足语,过去分词和宾语之间是逻辑上的动宾关系。

I keep my windows closed.

宾语补足语和宾语是主谓关系,那么宾语补足语是现在分词结构

I kept the boy standing outside.

It is obvious that ...显而易见

set out to do sth. 开始着手做某事

it would not prove difficult, 是不难做到的

prove 是连系动词,作"证明是"讲,本句子与 it would not be difficult 相同。

tell sb. about sth. 把某事告知某人

Eg.: He told the police about the theft.
or: 否则

Eg.: He can?t be ill or he wouldn?t have come.

or else: ( 口语) 否则 ......

Eg: Your room is so dirty. Clear it promptly, or else

It is true that..., but... 诚然 ....., 但是 ......

Eg.: It is true that the work is hard, but we?ll finish it ahead.

Ashamed of having acted so rashly, ... ... ... ... ... 其前省略了 being, 现在分词结构(形容词结构)做状语,此处相当于原因状语,放在主句前后均可。

Angry at everybody here, he left suddenly.

Anxious for a quick decision, he called his friends.

Nervous, the man opened the letter.

Lesson 17 The longest suspension bridge in the world

世界上最长的吊桥

一、【 Text 】课文

Verrazano, an Italian about whom little is known, sailed into New York Harbour in 1524 and named it Angouleme. He described it as 'a very agreeable situation located within two small hills in the midst of which flowed a great river.' Though Verrazano is by no means considered to be a great explorer, his name will probably remain immortal, for on November 21st, 1964, the greatest bridge in the world was named after him.

The Verrazano Bridge, which was designed by Othmar Ammann, joins Brooklyn to Staten Island. It has a span of 4260 feet. The bridge is so long that the shape of the

earth had to be taken into account by its designer. Two great towers support four huge cables. The towers are built on immense underwater platforms made of steel and concrete. The platforms extend to a depth of over 100 feet under the sea. These alone took sixteen months to build. Above the surface of the water, the towers rise to a height of nearly 700 feet. They support the cables from which the bridge has been suspended. Each of the four cables contains 26,108 lengths of wire. It has been estimated that if the bridge were packed with cars, it would still only be carrying a third of its total capacity. However, size and strength are not the only important things about this bridge. Despite its immensity, it is both simple and elegant, fulfilling its designer's dream to create 'an enormous object drawn as faintly as possible'.

### 二、【 New words and expressions

】生词和短语

suspension n. 悬,吊

agreeable adj. 宜人的

situation n. 地点,地方

locate v. 位于

immortal adj. 永生的,流芳百世的

Brooklyn n. 布鲁克林 (纽约一区名)

Staten n. 斯塔顿(岛)

span n. 跨度

cable n 缆索

concrete n. 混泥土

suspend v. 悬挂

length n. 根,段

estimate v. 估计

immensity n. 巨大

capacity n. 承受量

elegant adj. 优美别致的

faintly adv. 微细地

suspension n. 悬,吊

suspension bridge 吊桥

suspend: 悬挂

Eg.: The light is suspended from the ceiling.

暂停

Eg.: The train was suspended because of the heavy rain.

suspense: n. 担心,挂念,悬念

Eg.: The wonderful film give me a deep impression because of its suspense.

He didn?t tell us the truth in cap to me in suspense all day.

suspenders 吊袜带

agreeable adj. 宜人的

Today is agreeable.

agreeable situation

His house is in a agreeable situation.

situation n. 地点,地方

location

situate v.

locate v.

Beijing is located in the North of China.

Japan is located to the East of China.

is located to...

locate v. 位于

immortal adj. 永生的,流芳百世的

Brooklyn n. 布鲁克林(纽约一区名)

Staten n. 斯塔顿(岛)

span n. 跨度

cable n 缆索

concrete n. 混泥土

suspend v. 悬挂

length n. 根,段

estimate v. 估计

underestimate 低估

overestimate 高估

Eg.: At a rough estimate, the car is worth 500 thousand RMB.

estimation n. 判断

in my estimation

immensity n. 巨大

capacity n. 承受量

Are you clear about the capacity of the cinema?

做某事的能力

have a capacity for doing sth.

have a capacity to do

ability 成功地做到了

We have ability to finish the work in two days.

capability 内在的潜力

have capability to do

have capability of doing

Any chile has capability of learning a foreign launguge well.

Any chile has capability to learn a foreign launguge well.

faculty 侧重于 "主观的能力"

the faculty of seeing

the faculty of hearing

competence 胜任工作的能力、资格

I have competence for the job.

elegant adj. 优美别致的

The lady is elegant.

graceful: 强调一个人的体型

elegant: 还表示人的举止很得体,大方

delicate: 精致的

faintly adv. 微细地

三、【课文精析】

sailed into. . ---- 句子的主干

about whom- ---Italian

describe sth. as 把 ...... 描绘成 ...... , 认为 ......

常见的动词有: see, view, look upon, recoginze, regard, treat, accept

Eg.: I should describe the attempt as a failure.

His mother regards him as genius.

I accept his words as true.

located within two small hills in the midst of which flowed 于两座小山之间,一条大河滔滔流过。

a great river

位

located... 是过去分词短语作定语,修饰 situation;

in the midst of which 引导一个定语从句 , which 指 two small hills 。句子结构要倒装 (flowed 在 a great river 之前 )

in the midst of, 在 ..... 之中。

in the midst of two small hills flowed a great river

A great river flowed in the middle of the two hills.

in the middle of the night == at midnight

in the middle of the winter

in the middle of the summer

I like the village located within two small hills.

Eg.: 我们来到了一个农庄,在这个农庄的前面有一座大山。

We arrived at a farm house. in front of which is a mountain.

动词位于主语之前

though / although / even though 引导让步状语从句

用了 though, although 不能使用 but, yet 可以用 —— 强调转折关系。

by no means 决不,绝对不 (加强语气)	
E.: It is by no means pleasant to take a crowded bus. 不是一件令人高兴的事。	乘坐一辆拥挤的公交车无论如何
not by any means	
not at all	
He isn?t satisfied with a job at all.	
in no way	
in no case	
in no sense	
in no circumstances	
remain immortal	
be named after	
be named for	
take one?s name from	
a span of: 跨度,桥长	
take into account / take into consideration / take account of	考虑到
Eg.: We have to take the date into account when we have the meeting	<b>)</b> .

support: hold up 支撑

extend 延伸,伸展

a railway extends to the next city

extend to a depth of 深度

extend to a length of 长度

extend to a width of 宽度

rise to 上升的高度

which 指代先行词 cables

It has been estimated / expected that ...据估计

It is said

It is reported

It has been estimated / expected

be packed with... 作 "挤满 ......; 装满 .. .... 解"

were 虚拟语气

carry 承载

a third 三分之一

immensity----size

despite==in spite of

fulfilling: 分词做状语表结果

The bus was held up by the snowstorm, causing the delay.

her husband died in 1970, leaving her with two children.

At last he passed his examination, fulfilling his dream to go abroad. 次考试,实现了出国的梦想(现在分词做结果状语,表示一种主动的概念。)

他终于通过了这

Lesson 18 Electric currents in modern art

现代艺术中的电流

一、【 Text 】课文

Modern sculpture rarely surprises us any more. The idea that modern art can only be seen in museums is mistaken. Even people who take no interest in art cannot have failed to notice examples of modern sculpture on display in public places. Strange forms stand in gardens, and outside buildings and shops. We have got quite used to them. Some so-called 'modern' pieces have been on display for nearly fifty years.

In spite of this, some people--in-cluding myself--were surprised by a recent exhibition of modern sculpture. The first thing I saw when I entered the art gallery was a notice which said: 'Do not touch the exhibits. Some of them are dangerous!' The objects on display were pieces of moving sculpture. Oddly shaped forms that are suspended from the ceiling and move in response to a gust of wind are quite familiar to everybody. These objects, however, were different. Lined up against the wall, there were long thin wires attached to metal spheres. The spheres had been magnetized and attracted or repelled each other all the time. In the centre of the hall, there were a number of tall structures which contained coloured lights. These lights flickered continuously like traffic lights which have gone mad. Sparks were emitted from small black boxes and red lamps flashed on and off angrily. It was rather like an exhibition of prehistoric electronic equipment. These Peculiar forms not only seemed designed to shock people emotionally, but to give them electric shocks as well!

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

current n. 电流

sculpture n. 雕塑

mistaken adj. 错误的

gallery n. 美术馆

exhibit n. 展品,陈列品

oddly adv. 古怪的

attach v. 连,系

sphere n. 球体

magnetize v. 使磁化

repel v. 排斥

flicker v. 闪烁

emit v. 放射

flash v. 闪光

prehistoric adj. 史前的,老掉牙的

electronic adj. 电子的

peculiar adj. 奇异的

shock v. 令人震惊,刺激人

emotionally adv. 感情上

current n. 电流

current n. the flow of electricity 电流

a continuous movement of water 水流

adj. 目前的,现在的; current affairs 时事

currency n. 流通(货币)

currently adv. 普遍地,通常地,现在,当前

sculpture n. 雕塑

sculptural adj. 雕刻的,雕刻般的

sculptor n. 雕刻家

mistaken adj. 错误的

mistaken adj. incorrect; wrong; misunderstood

Eg.: The teacher has mistaken opinion of his pupi

language and he is often mistaken.

I. He doesn?t use simple plain

make a mistake / by mistake 弄错了

He took my umbrella by mistake.

and no mistake 确实如此(口语)

Eg: He is honest and no mistake.

mistake vt.

mistake sb. for 把某人误认为

Eg.: Yesterday, I mistook him for my classmate.

gallery n. 美术馆

exhibit n. 展品,陈列品

exhibit: show in public

exhibition n. 展览会

Eg.: Yesterday we went to an exhibition to visit exhibits.

oddly adv. 古怪的

oddly: strangely

odd adj. 古怪的

strange adj. 因为陌生而奇怪的

queer adj. 奇特的

Eg.: Look, he is wearing a queer hat.

fantastic adj. 奇妙的

eccentric adj. 怪癖的; He is an eccentric person.

attach v. 连,系

attach vt. 系,拴,粘上,贴上

attach to

Eg.; he attached the lamb to a tree.

attach to sb. for sth. 因为某事而把 ...... 加在某人身上

Eg.: We didn?t attach blame to him for his fail ure.

attach importance to sth. 对某事非常重视

Eg.: We attach importance to education.

be attached to sth. 喜欢,喜爱

Eg.: I?m very attached to her.

attachment n. 固定,爰慕,友情,附着

sphere n. 球体

magnetize v. 使磁化

magnetized vt.

Eg.: The iron was magnetized.

He speech magnetized the listeners.

repel v. 排斥

repel vt.: to drive back; cause feelings of dislike

Eg.: the different sexes attract each other and the same sexes repel on the contrary.

Let me go at once, you repel me. 让我走,你真让我恶心。

flicker v. 闪烁

flash v. 闪光

flicker v. shine unsteadily

flash v. shine for a moment

emit v. 放射

emit v. give off

emit sound / emit smell / emit light / emit heat / emit smoke

prehistoric adj. 史前的,老掉牙的

peculiar adj. strange and unusual

Eg.: The food has peculiar taste.

I?m feeling rather peculiar.

electronic adj. 电子的

peculiar adj. 奇异的

peculiar adj. stange and unusual

Eg.: The food has peculiar taste.

I?m feeling rather peculiar.

shock v. 令人震惊,刺激人

get shocked 受震动

At the news, he got shocked.

shock n. 震惊; get a big shock

emotionally adv. 感情上

emotional adj. 易激动的,情绪的,感情脆弱的

Eg.: I think you agree with me, women are often said to be more emotional than men.

反义词 unemotional

emotion: n. 感情:

Eg.: love,hatred, and grief are emotions.

feeling n. 某时的内心感受

Eg.: I can?t describe my feeling now

emotive adj. 引起情绪反应的

The word home is more emotive than house.

emotionally; emotional; unemotional; emotive; emotion; feeling

三、【课文精析】

rarely: seldom

We are not surprised at moden sculpture
that 引导同位语从句,修饰限定 the idea 的内容。
Eg. : The idea that one can learn English well in English-speaking countryes is mistaken.
重点句式结构
who take no interest in art   修饰说明 people
take interest in 对 感兴趣
take delight in 对 感到高兴
take pride in   对  感到骄傲
show interest in 显示对 的兴趣
cannot; failed to   双重否定意味着肯定;加强语气
he must have passed his examination last week.
He cannot have failed to pass hsi examination last week.
You must keep your promise.
You can?t fail to keep your promise.
On display / on show
We can see sculptures everywhere.

Key sentence:

in spite of this

尽管如此

Key sentence: The first thing I saw when I entered the art gallery was a notice which said: The first thing... was a notice which said... Key sentence: Oddly shaped forms that are suspended from the ceiling and move in response to a gust of wind are quite familiar to everybody. Oddly...that... that 引导的定语从句用来限定 shaped forms 谓语 are ...familiar to... 句子主干: Oddly shaped forms are familiar to everybody that 定语从句中: in response to / in reaction to 作为对 ..... 的反应 对某人来说很熟悉 be familiar to sb. Eg.: The house is familiar to him. I don?t really remember where I have seen him before, but he looks very familiar to 熟悉,熟知 be familiar with

Eg.: Are you familiar with the play of Shakespeare?

I,m familiar with that book too.

be familiar to sb. / be familiar with sth.

lined up 过去分词做状语,与 long thin wires 为被动关系

## 定语从句

there were long thin wires that were attached to metal spheres.

ther center of the hall 展厅的中央

coloured lights 彩色灯泡

continuously adv. 不停止的

ga mad 发疯,发狂 run mad

Eg. : he must have gone mad to do such a thing.

on and off: continuously

Eg: It has been raining on and off since noon.

It was rather like===It was more like 看起来更像

Key sentence:

...not only seemed designed to do sth.

not only... but ... as well

seem 系动词 + 名词 / 形容词 / 分词

#### 一只贵重的宝贝猫

#### 一、【 Text 】课文

Kidnappers are rarely interested in Animals, but they recently took considerable interest in Mrs Eleanor Ramsay's cat. Mrs Eleanor Ramsay, a very wealthy old lady,has shared a flat with her cat, Rastus, for a great many years. Rastus leads an orderly life. He usually takes a short walk in the evenings and is always home by seven o'clock. One evening, however, he failed to arrive. Mrs Ramsay got very worried. She looked everywhere for him but could not find him.

Three day after Rastus' disappearance, Mrs Ramsay received an anonymous letter. The writer stated that Rastus was in safe hands and would be returned immediately if Mrs Ramsay paid a ransom of &1000. Mrs Ramsay was instructed to place the money in a cardboard box and to leave it outside her door. At first, she decided to go to the police, but fearing that she would never see Rastus again --the letter had made that quite clear--she changed her mind. She drew &1000 from her bank and followed the kidnapper's instructions. The next morning, the box had disappeared but Mrs Ramsay was sure that the kidnapper would keep his word. Sure enough, Rastus arrived punctually at seven o'clock that evening. He looked very well, though he was rather thirsty, for he drank half a bottle of milk. The police were astounded when Mrs Ramsay told them what she had done. She explained that Rastus was very dear to her. Considering the amount she paid, he was dear in more ways than one!

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

dear adj. 亲爱的,珍贵的;昂贵的

kidnapper n. 绑架者,拐骗者

considerable adj. 相当大的

wealthy adj. 富的,有钱的

orderly adj. 有规律的

disappearance n. 失踪

anonymous adj. 匿名的

ransom n. 赎金

cardboard n. 硬纸板

withdraw (withdrew, withdrawn) v. (从银行)取钱

punctually adv. 准时地

astound v. 使吃惊

dear adj. 亲爱的,珍贵的;昂贵的

I can?t afford the car because it?s too dear.

The cat is dear to me.

cost sb dear 花了某人很多钱

kidnapper n. 绑架者,拐骗者

kidnap 绑架

considerable adj. 相当大的

a considerable business 大规模企业

He has got a considerable success.

considerably adv.

It?s considerably colder today than yesterday.

considerate adj. 体贴的

be considerate to sb 对某人很体贴入微

Are you considerate you wife?

considered 经过考虑的

It?s my conside red opinion. 这是我经过考虑的看法。

```
all things considered
                         就各方面而言
Eg: All things considered, he finished the work well.
considering prep & conj. & adv.
Eg.: Considering his age, the little boy reads very well.
considering (that )
considering adv.
He studies English well, considering.
 wealthy adj.
                  富的,有钱的
  orderly adj.
                 有规律的
                       失踪
  disappearance n.
  anonymous adj.
                      匿名的
               赎金
  ransom n.
pay ransom to sb.
The old lady paid a ransom of one thousand pounds to the kidnapper.
                      绑票(索取赎金)
hold sb to ransom
They kidnapped the boy and held him to rensom.
  cardboard n.
                  硬纸板
                                               (从银行)取钱
  withdraw (withdrew, withdrawn ) v.
                     准时地
  punctually adv.
not early nor late
```

punctual adj.

punctuality n.
astound v. 使吃惊
语意程度比 surprise 要强得多
吃惊程度 astoud>amaze>astonish>surprise
He was astounded to hear of her death.
They were amazed to find the lazy girl came very early.
surprising> surprised
三、【课文精析】
seldom take interest in
take great interest in
share sth. with sb.
I share the room with my friend.
for a long time
disciplined regular

take a short walk go for	a stroll		
however			
look for find			
after 可以和名词搭配			
Three days after~ arrival			
state; 非常正式的声明			
instruct: order			
be instructed to do sth.			
The journalist was instructed to	obtain		
fearing 现在分词做原因状语			
make it clear to sb that			
The teacher has made it clear t	o us that we m	nust read English aloud ever	y day.
keep his promise			
word 表示诺言时,要采用单数	牧形式		
keep his word break his	word	give sb. one?s word	

go back on one's word 食言

sure enough 果然,无疑

I said would happen, and sure enough it did happen.

half a bottle of milk

in more ways than one ( way ) in many ways

双重意义: dear price 昂贵; expensive 珍贵

The comma 逗号的用法

三个或三个以上的词、 短语或句子只用一个并列连接词来连接, 他们之间就要用逗号, 并列连接词前也要用逗号。

插入语或同位语前后必须用逗号分开

状语从句位于句首时也要用逗号和主句分隔开来,放在句尾则不需要

非限制性定语从句必须用逗号分开

语次转变词也应该用逗号将其和句子其他成分分开

Lesson 20 Pioneer pilots

飞行员的先驱

一、【 Text 】课文

In 1908 Lord Northcliffe offered a prize of £ 1000 to the first man who would fly across the English Channel. Over a year passed before the first attempt was made.

On July 19th, 1909, in the early morning, Hubert Latham took off from the French coast in his plane the 'Antoinette IV'. He had travelled only seven miles across the Channel when his engine failed and he was forced to land on the sea. The 'Antoinette' floated on the water until Latham was picked up by a ship.

Two days later, Louis Bleriot arrived near Calais with a plane called 'No. XI'. Bleriot had been making planes since 1905 and this was his latest model. A week before, he had completed a successful overland flight during which he covered twenty-six miles. Latham, however did not give up easily. He, too, arrived near Calais on the same day with a new 'Antonette'. It looks as if there would be an exciting race across the Channel. Both planes were going to take off on July 25th, but Latham failed to get up early enough. After making a short test flight at 4.15 a.m., Bleriot set off half an hour later. His great flight lasted thirty seven minutes. When he landed near Dover, the first person to greet him was a local policeman. Latham made another attempt a week later and got within half a mile of Dover, but he was unlucky again. His engine failed and he landed on the sea for the second time.

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

pioneer n. 先驱

lord n. 对(英国)贵族的尊称;勋爵

Calais n. 加来(法国港市)

overland adj. 陆上的

pioneer n. 先驱

young pioneer

同义词 advocate 倡导者

pioneer adult education

lord n. 对(英国)贵族的尊称;勋爵

lordless 无郡主的

lordship

lordly 昂迈的

duke 公爵

marquis 侯爵

earl 伯爵

viscount 子爵

baron 男爵

Calais n. 加来(法国港市)

overland adj. 陆上的

overnight 一夜之间的

overpopulated 人口众多的

overseas 海外的

over + 动词 表示超过

Eg: overeat, 吃多了

oversleep 睡过头了

overwork 工作过量

overcharge 索要价钱过高

overestimate 过高估计

### 三、【课文精析】

Key sentence:

In 1908 Lord Northcliffe offered a prize of &1000 to the first man who would fly across the English Channel.

the first man to fly across...

序数词和动词不定式 to 搭配连用中以代替其后的定语从句

She was the only one to survive the plane crash.

如果 before 所引导的时间状语从句之前出现段时间,则最佳翻译方法:才。。。

offer a prize of sth( 奖励) to sb 给予某人 ......奖励

Eg: He offered a prize of 1,000 to the first man who fly cross the English Channel.

attempt in one's attempt

Eg: She failed in her attempt to swim the tunnel.

make an attempt on 尝试,试图

make an attempt to do 尝试,试图

make no attept 没有 ……企图,尝试

at that moment

failed: break down

fail 失败,忽视

She failed to win the prize.

be forced to do 被迫做
pick up
with a plane: with 具有、带有
had been making planes
Key sentence:
A week before, he had completed a successful overland flight during which he covered twenty-six miles.
during whichduring flight
It looked as if   : 似乎,看起来
It looked as if there would be a heavy storm.
make a short test flight
make another attempt
介词和关系代词搭配连用,当定语从句的关系代词是介词的宾语时,能够把可移位的介词提前放在关系代词的前面。 (正式)

在非正式问题和口语当中,介词一般要放在从句的末尾

定语从句中介词位置

决定介词位置的 4 个因素:

- 1. 如果是口语,介词位于句尾,同时关系代词可以省略。
- 2. 非正式问题,介词位于从句句尾。
- 3.有些动词 + 介词,合成词组被看成是不可分割的语言单位,这个时候介词必须紧跟动词,不可移动

take after account for

4.在很多情况下,介词和关系代词构成独立的介词短语,在句中起状语作用,与从句的谓语动词毫无关系,而不是谓语动词的一部分,这时介词始终位于关系代词之前

Eg: He described it as a very agreeable situation located within two small hills

In the midst of two small hills, flowed a great river.

Eg: He described it as a very agreeable situation located within two small hills in the midst of which flowed a great river.(in the midst of 跟后面的谓语动词 flow 没有任何关系)

Mrs. Ramsay received an anonymous letter in which the writer stated that Rastus was in safe hands.

Lesson 21 Daniel Mendoza

丹尼尔 ?门多萨

一、【 Text 】课文

Boxing matches were very popular in England two hundred years ago. In those days, boxers fought with bare fists for Prize money. Because of this, they were known as 'prizefighters'. However, boxing was very crude, for there were no rules and a prizefighter could be seriously injured or even killed during a match.

One of the most colourful figures in boxing history was Daniel Mendoza who was born in 1764. The use of gloves was not introduced until 1860 when the Marquis of Queensberry drew up the first set of rules. Though he was technically a prizefighter, Mendoza did much to change crude prizefighting into a sport, for he brought science to the game. In his day, Mendoza enjoyed tremendous popularity. He was adored by rich and poor alike.

Mendoza rose to fame swiftly after a boxing match when he was only fourteen years old. This attracted the attention of Richard Humphries who was then the most eminent boxer in England. He offered to train Mendoza and his young pupil was quick to learn. In fact, Mendoza soon became so successful that Humphries turned against him. The two men quarrelled bitterly and it was clear that the argument could only be settled by a fight. A match was held at Stilton where both men fought for an hour. The public bet a great deal of money on Mendoza, but he was defeated. Mendoza met Humphries in the ring on a later occasion and he lost for a second time. It was not until his third match in 1790 that he finally beat Humphries and became Champion of England. Meanwhile, he founded a highly successful Academy and even Lord Byron became one of his pupils. He earned enormous sums of money and was paid as much as &100 for a single appearance. Despite this, he was so extravagant that he was always in debt. After he was defeated by a boxer called Gentleman Jackson, he was quickly forgotten. He was sent to prison for failing to pay his debts and died in poverty in 1836.

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

boxing n. 拳击

boxer n. 拳击手

bare adj. 赤裸的

prizefighter n. 职业拳击手(尤指古时赤手拳击手)

crude adj. 粗野的

marquis n. 侯爵

technically adv. 严格根据法律意义地

science n. 科学

popularity n. 名望

adore v. 崇拜,爰戴

alike adv. 一样地

fame n. 名声

eminent adj. 著名的,杰出的

bitterly adv. 厉害地

bet (bet, bet; betted, betted) v. 打赌

academy n. 专业学校

extravagant adj. 浪费的,奢侈

poverty n. 贫困

boxing n. 拳击

boxer n. 拳击手

bare adj. 赤裸的

bare uncovered

bare(部分的)赤裸

bare fist 赤手空拳

bare foot 光着脚的

bare handed 光着手的

bare legged 光着腿的

naked 全裸

He?s walking in bare feet.

He is naked.

nude adj. 光秃秃的; n. 裸体(雕象,油画)

a nude hillside 光秃秃的山坡

prizefighter n. 职业拳击手(尤指古时赤手拳击手)

crude adj. 粗野的

be crude to sb 对 ......粗鲁 , 无理 , rude 语气比 crude 要弱

He is crude to the girl.

marquis n. 侯爵

technically adv. 严格根据法律意义地

science n. 科学

popularity n. 名望

in popularity 受欢迎,受喜爱

Instant foods are getting in popularity. 即食食品越来越受欢迎。

popular songs are in popularity.

popular with 受人喜爱

popularity 名望,受人欢迎的状态

fame 出名的名声 famous adj.

reputation 声誉

adore v. 崇拜,爰戴

More and more people adore the famous adtress.

alike adv. 一样地

He was adored by rich, and poor alike.

The teacher is adored by boy, girl and alike.

fame n. 名声

eminent adj. 著名的,杰出的

eminent scientist

distinguished

bitterly adv. 厉害地

It is blowing bitterly.

bitter: 苦的、辛酸的、刺骨的

bitter pills may have wholesome effects 良药

bet (bet, bet; betted, betted) v. 打赌

bet on sth. 以... 打赌

bet sb. that 跟某人打赌

bet one's bottom dollar on somebody 对 .....孤注一掷

He bet his bottom dollar on his last attempt.

bet on the wrong horse 对 ..... 做出了错误的判断

I bet 我肯定,我断言

academy n. 专业学校

extravagant adj. 浪费的,奢侈

extravagant hobit

thrifty frugal economical

poverty n. 贫困

in poverty 在贫困当中

indigence 贫困 (正式)

destitution 赤贫
penury 诘据
三、【课文精析】
in popularity
fought with bare fists: 赤手空拳的打斗
Key sentence:
One of the most colourful figures in boxing history was Daniel Mendoza who was born in 1764.
one of the most famous people
introduce: bring in
Potatos were introduced into Europe from South America.
drew up: 制定,起草
Sb. did much to do sth.
in his full time in his good day
rise to fame = become famous
attract sb.?s sttention == attract the attention of sb.

turn against sb

与 ......反目成仇

severely

Key sentence:

It was not until his third match in 1790 that he finally beat Humphries and became Champion.

as much as 多达

in debt: 欠债

Lesson 22 By heart 熟记台词

一、【 Text 】课文

Some plays are so successful that they run for years on end. In many ways, this is unfortunate for the poor actors who are required to go on repeating the same lines night after night. One would expect them to know their parts by heart and never have cause to falter. Yet this is not always the case.

A famous actor in a highly successful play was once cast in the role of an aristocrat who had been imprisoned in the Bastille for twenty years. In the last act, a gaoler would always come on to the stage with a letter which he would hand to the prisoner. Even though the noble was expected to read the letter at each performance, he always insisted that it should be written out in full.

One night, the gaoler decided to play a joke on his colleague to find out if, after so many performances, he had managed to learn the contents of the letter by heart. The curtain went up on the final act of the play and revealed the aristocrat sitting alone behind bars in his dark cell. Just then, the gaoler appeared with the precious letter in his hands. He entered the cell and presented the letter to the aristocrat. But the copy he gave him had not been written out in full as usual. It was simply a blank sheet of paper. The gaoler looked on eagerly, anxious to see if his fellow actor had at last learnt his lines. The noble stared at the blank sheet of paper for a few seconds.

Then, squinting his eyes, he said: 'The light is dim. Read the letter to me.' And he promptly handed the sheet of paper to the gaoler. Finding that he could not remember a word of the letter either, the gaoler replied: 'The light is indeed dim, sire. I must get my glasses.' With this, he hurried off the stage. Much to the aristocrat's amusement, the gaoler returned a few moments later with a pair of glasses and the usual copy of the letter which he proceeded to read to the prisoner.

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

run v. (戏剧、电影等)

lines n. (剧本中的)台词

part n. 剧中的角色,台词

falter v. 支吾,结巴说

cast (cast, cast ) v. 选派 ......扮演角色

role n. 角色

aristocrat n. 贵族

imprison v. 关押

Bastille . 巴士底狱

gaoler n. 监狱长,看守连演,连映

colleague n. 同事

curtain n. (舞台中的)幕布

reveal v. 使显露

cell n. 单人监房,监号

blank adj. 空白的

squint v. 眯着(眼)看,瞄

dim adj. 昏暗

```
n. (古用法)陛下
  sire
                v. 继续进行
  proceed
         (戏剧、电影等)
 run v.
The film is so successful that it runs for several weeks.
           (剧本中的)台词
 lines n.
         剧中的角色,台词
 part n.
           支吾,结巴说
 falter vi.
stammer
He has practised the poem several times, so he has no cause to falter.
         蹒跚而行( =stgger )
falter v.
He faltered home.
                       选派 ......扮演角色
 cast (cast, cast ) v.
  role n. 角色
The actor was cast in the role of hero.
                贵族
 aristocrat n.
               关押
 imprison v.
put sb imprison:
                   关押
```

He was imprisoned for 10 years.

: n.

imprisonment

sentence sb to life imprisonment : 判某人终生监禁

监狱: prison, jail, gaol

把......送进监狱

send sb. to prison == put sb in prison == throw sb into prison

in prison 坐牢

the prison 监狱

He is in prison / jail.

He is behind boars.

Bastille . 巴士底狱

gaoler n. 监狱长,看守连演,连映

colleague n. 同事

curtain n. (舞台中的)幕布

reveal v. 使显露

The secret hasn?t been reveald.

reveal: 揭露,揭穿,把什么露出来

A curtain was up and revealed the beautiful scenery.

disclose: 揭发

discclose the truth

discover: 发现

uncover: 揭开具体的盖子

A very tight dress reveals the beautiful figure. 紧身的裙子露出了漂亮的身段。

revealabel adj. 可展现的

revealer: 探测器

cell n. 单人监房,监号

blank adj. 空白的

squint. 眯着(眼)看,瞄

squint one's eyes 眯上眼睛

Eg.: He squinted his eyes and looked at the letter.

pear at: 眯着眼睛看

dim adj. 昏暗

The room is too dim so I can;t read the letter.

gloomy:(天气,心情)抑郁的

The weather is gloomy today.

He is in gloomy mood.

dusky:( 天色)昏暗的

Towards evening is getting dusky.

murly: (天色)漆黑的,黑暗的

I can?t go out at murky night.

misty: 多雾的,迷蒙的

The building is out of sight on such a misty day.

sire n. (古用法)陛下

proceed v. 继续进行

proceed vi. particular after stopping

proceed to / with: 进行继续某事

Let?s proceed to business. You must proceed with your work. 从什么着手开始继续 proceed from They proceed from lesson 1. 起诉某人 proceed from Eg: He decided to proceed against his neighbour. 三、【课文精析】 熟记台词 by heart on end 1 . == continuously: 连续的,位于具体的时间之后 Eg: He sat there for hours on end. We had hardly anything to eat for days on end. 2 = = upright竖着 Eg: The cat's fur stood on end. I got a big shock so my hear stood on end. 我吓了一大跳,以致于毛骨悚然。 关系代词做主语,不能省略 who = actor, Eg.: The student who was required to recite the poem 100 times is really poor.

Eg.: The sentence is so important that you must learn it by heart.

learn/ know by heart:

把 ......牢记在心

heart and soul 全心全意的,全身心的

Eg: We serve the students heart and soul

take heart 鼓起勇气,恢复信心

lose heart 失去信心

lose heart to sb= give heart to sb: 轻信于某人

Eg: The boy lost his heart to the girl

put one's heart into sth: 致力于某事

Eg: Nothing is difficult if you put your heart into it. 世上无难事,只怕有心人

have one's heart in one's boots 提心吊胆

Eg: He had his heart in his boots when he went out alone at night.

even though = even if = though / although

at each performance = at every performance

insist: 坚决要求, suggest: 建议, order: 命令, demand: 要求, require: 要求

表示建议/要求/希望,和 that 宾语从句搭配, that 从句必须出现 should + 动词原形的虚拟, should 可以省略。

in full==fully=completely

play a joke(cheek) on sb: 开某人玩笑

on the final act == in the last act

with ,独立主格结构

hand to == present sth. to == pass to

把 ......递给某人

as usual

look on 旁观

anxious, 形容词短语做伴随状况状语

stare at 一眨不眨地

squinting: ing 形式,做方式状语,伴随状况状语

prmptly ==immediately

with this 说完这话

hurry off

much, 用来加强语气

play a joke on 开玩笑;play a trick on 捉弄,单方面取乐

have a joke with sb. 和某人开玩笑,强调两人共同取乐

Lesson 23 One man?s meat is another man?s poison

各有所爱

## 一、【 Text 】课文

People become quite illogical when they try to decide what can be eaten and what cannot be eaten. If you lived in the Mediterranean, for instance, you would consider octopus a great delicacy. You would not be able to understand why some people find it repulsive. On the other hand, your stomach would turn at the idea of frying potatoes in animal fat----the normally accepted practice in many northern countries. The sad truth is that most of us have been brought up to eat certain foods and we stick to them all our lives.

No creature has received more praise and abuse than the common garden snail. Cooked in wine, snails are a great luxury in various parts of the world. There are countless people who, ever since their early years, have learned to associate snails with food. My friend, Robert, lives in a country where snails are despised. As his flat is in a large town, he has no garden of his own. For years he has been asking me to collect snails from my garden and take them to him. The idea never appealed to me very much, but one day, after a heavy shower, I happened to be walking in my garden when I noticed a huge number of snails taking a stroll on some of my prize plants. Acting on a sudden impulse, I collected several dozen, put them in a paper bag, and took them to Robert. Robert was delighted to see me and equally pleased with my little gift. I left the bag in the hall and Robert and I went into the living room where we talked for a couple of hours. I had forgotten all about the snails when Robert suddenly said that I must stay to dinner. Snails would, of course, be the main dish. I did not fancy the idea and I reluctantly followed Robert out of the room. To our dismay, we saw that there were snails everywhere: they had escaped from the paper bag and had taken complete possession of the hall! I have never been able to look at a snail since then.

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

poison n. 毒药

illogical adj. 不合逻辑的,无章法的

octopus n. 章鱼

delicacy n. 美味,佳肴

repulsive adj. 令人反感的,令人生厌的

stomach n. 胃

turn v. 感到恶心,翻胃

fry v. 油炸

fat n. (动物、植物)油

abuse n. 辱骂,责骂

snail n. 蜗牛

luxury n. 奢侈品,珍品

associat e v. 联想到

despise v. 鄙视

appeal v. 引起兴致

shower n. 阵雨

stroll n. 溜达,散步

impulse n. 冲动

fancy v. 喜爱,喜欢

poison n. 毒药

poison n.& vt.

He was poisoned by pesticide.

give poison to sb/ give poison to sth. 使某人或某事中毒

hate each other like poison 彼此互相恨透

name one?s poison

Name your poison,please. 说出你要喝点什么酒啊。

What?s your poison? 你要喝什么酒?

illogical adj. 不合逻辑的,无章法的

octopus n. 章鱼

delicacy n. 美味,佳肴

Eg.: He considered chicken to be a great delicacy.

delicate adj. 美味的,可口的,清淡的

delicious adj. 味道美的

repulsive adj. 令人反感的,令人生厌的

disgusting adj.

The dish is repulsive.

stomach n. 胃

turn v. 感到恶心,翻胃

fry v. 油炸

fry v.: be cooked in hot oil

fried egg 煎鸡蛋

fried bread

fring pan 煎锅

fry up 加热

Fry up the food, please.

fry in one's own fat 自作自受

have other fish to fry 另有要事要做

Eg: Hello,Lucy, let's go have dinner.

fat n. (动物、植物)油

put on fat 长胖,发胖

fat adj. 胖的 运用此 adj. 时常很不礼貌,因此用 large, heavy, overweight 替代。

abuse n. 辱骂,责骂

Don?t abuse y our authority.

He greeted his wife with a stream of abuse.

他骂妻子的声音不绝于耳。

snail n. 蜗牛

luxury n. 奢侈品,珍品

The diamond ring is a luxury to me.

luxurious adj. 奢侈的,奢华的

a luxurious hotel

associate v. 联想到

associate v. connect in one?s mind

A with B 把 ...... 联想到一起 = connect with.

Eg: I can't associate you with your wife.

Can you associate snails with delicious food.

associate with ==connect with==link with == be bound up with

despise v. 鄙视

despise vt. regard as worthless

Eg.: We despise him for a coward.

我们把他看作一个懦夫。

look down upon 鄙视,瞧不起

Eg: Don't look down upon anyone.

appeal v. 引起兴致

appeal to sb 引起某人兴趣

Eg: Eating snails never appeals to me.

appeal 上诉,呼吁

appeal for sth. 为某事而上诉

shower n. 阵雨

stroll n. 溜达,散步

stroll n. slow walking for pleasure in street or in garden.

go for a stroll; take a stroll; == go for a walk; take a walk

stroller 散步的人

stroll vi.

He is strolling along the road.

ramble 海岸,林中的漫步

The couple are irambling in the forest.

roam 不安定的漂泊,徘徊

The tramp roams every day.

wander 流浪,徘徊

He has nothing to do, so he is wandering along the street.

impulse n. 冲动

impulse: a sudden wish to do sth.

on impulse 冲动的

He rushed out to catch up (with) the lady on impulse.

be driven by impulse to do sth. 情不自禁的做某事

Why did you do it?

I should say I was driven by impulse to do it like this.

impulsive adj. 冲动的

impulsively adv. 冲动地

dozen: agroup of twelve

by the dozen 成打的

dozens of 许多的

two dozen eggs , a dozen roses. ( 其用法和 hundred, thousand 一样)

a dozen of the (these ) roses 这些玫瑰中的一打

数词 +dozen + 物品: .....打 .....(物品)

Speak nineteen to the dozen 说个不停

Eg.: The old lady is speaking nineteen to the dozen.

fancy v. 喜爱,喜欢

Eg.: I don?t fancy living in the cold room.

fancy 想像,设想(=image) (表示一种惊讶的心情)(其后接动名词做宾语)

Fancy meeting you here. 没想到在这儿见到你。

自以为是,自命不凡 fancy oneself Do you fancy yourself? 三、【课文精析】 Key sentence: People become quite illogical when they try to decide what can be eaten and what cannot be eaten. 人们在决定吃什么或者不吃什么的时候,往往变得不合情理。 当涉及到或谈及到叙述客观事实的时候 it comes to sth it comes to doing sth ..... 用于 when 引导的时间状语从句 Eg.:He never complains when it comes to helping his wife with the house work. for instance == for example consider (to be)... 转折连接词,表示而另一方面 on the other hand 介词搭配作状语,表示当 ...... 就 ...... ; 一 ...... 就 ...... at the idea of: at 一想到 at the idea of at the sight of 一看到 一提到 at the mention of

一听到 ..... 消息

at the news of

at the touth of 一触摸到 ..... 东西

at the sound of 一听到 ...... 声音

at the thought of 一想到

Eg.: I was glad at the thought of getting something te eat.

I always love at the mention of ghost story.

stick to + 名词 ==insist on doing sth == persist in doing sth

practice 表示习俗,做法

habit 表示个人习惯

custom 社会的风俗或习俗

Eg.: Early to bed and early to rise is good habit.

It is now quite common practice for married women not to take their husband?s second name.

The practice of closing shops on Sundays.

My practice to study English is to read everyday.

the custum of giving present at Christmas

Social customs vary greatly from country to country.

in many northern countries.

Key sentence:

The sad truth is that most of us have been brought up to eat certain foods and ...

that 引导表语从句,说明 truth 的内容

 Eg.: Joe is born in England, but brought up in France. She was brought up to beliee that money is the most (great) important thing in life. 他从小到大一直认为金钱是生活中最重要的东西。 被动语态形式,表自小长大,在成长的过程当中已经习惯于 I?ve been brought up to eat fish, just because my mother is fond of fish as well. He has been brought up to eat fring potatoes just because his parents are fond of that. He gave much attention to bring up his children. stick to = keep to; not give up Eg.: We stick to them all our lives. 介词) I made my decision and I am going to stick to it. (to stick to the idea stick to the plan insist on doing sth. 坚持做某事 坚持做某事 persist in doing sth. Key sentence: People become quite illogical when they try to decide what can be eaten and what cannot be eaten. Key sentence: No creature has received more praise and abuse than the common garden

snail.

## 比较级表达最高级的概念

Nobody is more beautiflu than you.

He is more intelligent than anyone else in my class.

The common garden snail often receive more praise and abuse than other creatures.

cooked 过去分词做定语,与 snails 构成被动关系。

countless: 无数的,数不尽的 (=numerous)

who 引导定语从句

associate sth. with sth. 把某物与某物相联系

Key sentence:

People there, don?t consider snails to be a great dilicacy.

no garden of his own 没有自己的庭院

Robert is forn of snails very much.

The idea never interested me very much...

happened to do 恰巧,碰巧

I happened to be out when he called.

We both happened to be travelling on the same plane.

happen / chance

It happened that I was out when he called.
It chanced that I was out when he called.
when
表示正在这时突然,通常使用过去进行时,过去完成时等搭配;位于句中
He was having a bath when the telephine suddenly rang.
We had not like this when came in.
We were about to start when it rained.
snails (that were ) taking a stroll
现在分词做定语,修饰 snails
on a sudden impulse 一时的,冲动的
Acting on a sudden impulse, he went shopping to buy several dresses.
Robert was delighted to see me and equally pleased with my little gift. ==Robert was not only delighted to see me, but also pleased with my little gift.
be delighted to do
be pleased to do
when 特殊用法,表示就在这个时候
reluctantly: unwillingly 不情愿的

to our dismay 使我们感到惊愕的是

Eg.: Before we came back, all the snails had already escaped from the paper bag and had taken complete possession of the hall.

take possession 占据,占有

The soldiers took possession of enemies? fort.

The terrorists took possession of the embassy. 恐怖分子占领了大使馆。

Lesson 24 A skeleton in the cupboard "家丑"

## 一、【 Text 】课文

We often read in novels how a seemingly respectable person or family has some terrible secret which has been concealed from strangers for years. The English language possesses a vivid saying to describe this sort of situation. The terrible secret is called 'a skeleton in the cupboard '. At some dramatic moment in the story the terrible secret becomes known and a reputation is ruined. The reader's hair stands on end when he reads in the final pages of the novel that the heroine, a dear old lady who had always been so kind to everybody, had, in her youth, poisoned every one of her five husbands.

It is all very well for such things to occur in fiction. To varying degrees, we all have secrets which we do not want even our closest friends to learn, but few of us have skeletons in the cupboard. The only person I know who has a skeleton in the cupboard is George Carlton, and he is very proud of the fact. George studied medicine in his youth. Instead of becoming a doctor, however, he became a successful writer of detective stories. I once spent an uncomfortable weekend which I shall never forget at his house. George showed me to the guestroom which, he said, was rarely used. He told me to unpack my things and then come down to dinner. After I had stacked my shirts and underclothes in two empty drawers, I decided to hang one of the two suits I had brought with me in the cupboard. I opened the cupboard door and then stood in front of it petrified. A skeleton was dangling before my eyes. The sudden movement of the door made it sway slightly and it gave me the impression that it was about to leap out at me. Dropping my suit, I dashed downstairs to tell George. This was worse than 'a terrible secret'; this was a real skeleton! But George was unsympathetic. 'Oh, that,' he said with a smile as if he were talking about an old friend. 'That's Sebastian. You forget that I was a medical student once upon a time.'

skeleton n. 骷髅

seemingly adv. 表面上地

respectable adj. 体面的,雅观的

conceal v. 隐藏,隐瞒

vivid adj. 生动的

dramatic adj. 令人激动的,扣人心弦的

ruin v. 毁坏

heroine n. 女主人公

fiction n. 小说

varying adj. 不同的

medicine n. 医学

guestroom n. (家庭中的)来客住房

unpack vt. (从箱中)取出

stack adj. (整齐地)堆放,排放

underclothes n. 内衣

drawer n. 抽屉

petrify v. 使惊呆

dangle v. 悬挂

sway v. 摇摆

unsympathetic adj. 不表同情的,无动于衷的

medical adj. 医学的

skeleton n. 骷髅

a skeleton in the cupboard==a skeleton in the closet == a family skeleton

It?s time to bring a family skeleton out of the cupboard

skeleton key 万能钥匙

a walking skeleton 骨瘦如柴的人

reduced to too a skeleton 瘦的皮包骨

He has nothing to eat for a couple of days so he has been reduced to too a skeleton.

seemingly adv. 表面上地

respectable adj. 体面的,雅观的

respectable decent, graceful, deserving respect: 体面的,雅观的,可敬的

Eg.: He is a most respectable man.

The tie is for a respectale man only.

respectable: 可敬的

respectful: 充满敬意的,尊敬人的

A respectable person is respectful to others.

respective 各自的

Eg.:Our students return to their respective classroom.

conceal v. 隐藏,隐瞒

conceal: hide, 比 hide 更加正式,语气强烈

conceal sth. from sb.

Eg.: He concealed his disappoint from his friends.

He concealed his bets from his wife.

When the mother coming, the little girl hid behind the curtain.

hide, hid, hidden

vivid adj. 生动的

vivid 生动的,栩栩如生的 ,鲜艳的 ,活泼的

Eg.: There is a vivid proverb.

vivid blue 碧蓝色

he is vivid with life. 他是生气勃勃。

Yours discription is really vivid.

more vivid, the most vivid

dramatic adj. 令人激动的,扣人心弦的

dramatic 比 exciting 更加强烈

The dramatic things is still vivid in his mind.

ruin v. 毁坏

heroine n. 女主人公

fiction n. 小说

fiction 和 novel

fiction (集合名词)不可数 (poetry)

novel 某一部具体的小说 (poem)

I prefer reading fiction to hearing about real invent.

varying adj. 不同的

=various

different 与 ...... 不一样

My idea differents from yours.

医学 medicine n. (家庭中的)来客住房 guestroom n. (从箱中)取出 unpack vt. (整齐地)堆放,排放 stack adj. stack up the books The housewife is stacking up the clothing. underclothes n. 内衣 underclothing, underwear 抽屉 drawer n. petrify v. 使惊呆

= shock, dumbfound

Heard the news I was petrified.

dangle v. 悬挂

sway v. 摇摆

unsympathetic adj. 不表同情的,无动于衷的

sympathetic 同情的

sympathy n. in sympathy 同情地 (= sympathetically )

medical adj. 医学的

三、【课文精析】

how 引导宾语从句

has some terrible secret

which 引导的定语从句,修饰说明 secret

seemingly: 9=from appearence) 从表面上看来,

a seemingly respectable person: 表面上受尊重的人

possess:(= have got, own )

不定式 to 作定语,修饰说明 vivid saying, 来描述这种场景。

some —表示 "某一个", 修饰单数可数名词

ruin 泛指概念,表示毁坏的过程不是一下完成的 (spoil)

The rain ruined / spoiled our holiday.

destroy: 把凭借某种外力来破坏和摧毁事物,完全摧毁

The earthquake destroyed almost entired city.

damage: 侧重强调把 ...弄坏,但是可以修复

one's hair stands on end: 某人感到毛骨悚然的

I thought I was alone in my room until I heard the mysterious noice again, and my hair stands on end.

make/set one's hair stand on end: 使某人感到毛骨悚然的

in her youth: 在她年轻时

everyone

every one of 与介词 of 连用时要分开

it is all very well but 不赞成不满意的反语, "好倒是好,但是 ……"

Eg: It is all very well for them to ask me to do it, but I am too busy.

It is all very well for you to suggent taking a few days rest, but how can finish our work in time.

occur: 某个事件出乎意料的发生(正式)

happen: 某个事件出乎意料发生

take place: 事件根据安排 "举行"

Eg.: When did the accident happen / occur?

It occured to me that / to do.

It occured to me to open the window.

When will the wedding take place?

To varying degrees: 从不同角度来讲

which 引导定语从句修饰 secret

learn: 了解某个事实,学习某种知识、技能

know 知道某个事实,具有某方面的知识、技能,认识、了解某个人(状态动词,不能用于进行时态)

I learned that I had passed the test.

She knows about computers.

She is learning about computers.

instead of + doing---- 表示相反、没有、取而代之的是 ......

stood in front of sth. petrified: 站在 ...前,目瞪口呆

frightened: 在某个特定的场合下,受到惊吓

terrified: 表示惊吓的程度,更加强烈,感到恐怖

afraid (of ): 表示一种状态,永久性的恐惧

it gave me the impression that: 给某人以印象

make a lasting impression on sb: 给某人以不可磨灭的印象

have a false impression of sb: 对某人有错误的看法

give sb impression that: 给某人印象

impress sb with sth 用…给某人留下印象

be about to do sth.: 即将,就要。暗示动作即将发生(多与 when 连用)

I was about to go to bed when there was a knock at the door.

leap out at sb. 跳出来扑向某人

drop---- 是我所发出的主动动作,所以用 -ing 形式

as if 引导虚拟语气

## 一、【 Text 】课文

One of the most famous sailing ships of the nineteenth century, the Cutty Sark, can still be seen at Greenwich. She stands on dry land and is visited by thousands of people each year. She serves as an impressive reminder of the great ships of the past. Before they were replaced by steamships, sailing vessels like the Cutty Sark were used to carry tea from China and wool from Australia. The Cutty Sark was one of the fastest sailing ships that has ever been built. The only other ship to match her was the Thermopylae. Both these ships set out from Shanghai on June 18th, 1872 on an exciting race to England. This race, which went on for exactly four months, was the last of its kind. It marked the end of the great tradition of ships with sails and the beginning of a new era.

The first of the two ships to reach Java after the race had begun was the Thermopylae, but on the Indian Ocean, the Cutty Sark took the lead. It seemed certain that she would be the first ship home, but during the race she had a lot of bad luck. In August, she was struck by a very heavy storm during which her rudder was torn away. The Cutty Sark rolled from side to side and it became impossible to steer her. A temporary rudder was made on board from spare planks and it was fitted with great difficulty. This greatly reduced the speed of the ship, for there was danger that if she travelled too quickly, this rudder would be torn away as well. Because of this, the Cutty Sark lost her lead. After crossing the equator, the captain called in at a port to have a new rudder fitted, but by now the Thermopylae was over five hundred miles ahead. Though the new rudder was fitted at tremendous speed, it was impossible for the Cutty Sark to win. She arrived in England a week after the Thermopylae. Even this was remarkable, considering that she had had so many delays. There is no doubt that if she had not lost her rudder she would have won the race easily.

二、【 New words and expressions

】 生词和短语

impressive adj. 给人深刻印象的

steamship n. 蒸汽轮船

vessel n. 轮船,大木船

era n. 时期,时代

Java n. 爪哇 (印度尼西亚一岛)

rudder n. 舵

roll v. 颠簸,摇摆

steer v. 掌握方向

temporary adj. 临时的

plank n. 大块木板

fit v. 安装

Equator n. 赤道

delay n. 耽误

impressive adj. 给人深刻印象的

This is a impressive thing.

impression n. 印象

make a lasting impression on sb: 给某人以不可磨灭的印象

have a false impression of sb: 对某人有错误的看法

give sb impression that: 给某人印象

impress vt.

impress sb. 给某人留下印象

impress sb with sth 用…给某人留下印象

steamship n. 蒸汽轮船

vessel n. 轮船,大木船

vessel (正式的词汇)可代替 ship,boat. 用于文学体

a sailing vessel, a fishing vessel

boat 比 ship 小,可以替换 ship( 非正式文体 )

a fishing boat

era n. 时期,时代

era: "纪元", 地球、人类社会历史上的一个很长的时期,以特别事物或发展为标志

the beginning of new era

the end of old era

times: 历史上的一个阶段 "时代,时期"

in ancient times

in classic times

Roman times

age: 特定的历史阶段(大写,构成专有名词)

a stone age 石器时代

the space age 太空时代

This is a beganning of era

Java n. 爪哇 (印度尼西亚一岛)

rudder n. 舵

roll v. 颠簸 , 摇摆

steer v. 掌握方向

steer: 驾驶水路交通工具,强调掌握方向,导航

drive: 开汽车,火车

pilot: 操纵轮船,飞机

He steers the boat suddenly.
He piloted his plane.
temporary adj.   临时的
temporary jobs / house
temporarily adv.
temporariness n.
==transient: 短暂的,瞬间的
反义: permanent: 永久的
contemporary: 当代 的
plank n. 大块木板
fit v. 安装
Equator n. 赤道
delay n. 耽误
三、【课文精析】
one of the most famous 最著名的 之一
Key sentence:
She stands on dry land and is visited by thousands of people each year.

dry land:

陆地

Key sentence:
She serves as an impressive reminder of the great ships of the past.
serve as:(=act as) 起…"作用"
impressive reminder: 深刻的印象,作为 …… 的回忆
replace vt. ==take place of

stemship: 汽船

sailing ship /sailing vessel: 帆船

match:( = be equal to ) 与 ...... 相匹敌,相比

match in / for

The only other ship to match her was the Thermopylae.

动词不定式 to 作定语,修饰 the only other ship

Key sentence:

Both these ships set out from Shanghai on June 18th, 1872 on an exciting race to England.

Key sentence:

This race, which went on for exactly four months, was the last of its kind. It marked the end of the great tradition of ships with sails and the beginning of a new era.

which---- 指代 this race, 引导非限定性定语从句

帆船: ships with sail, sailing ships, sailing vessels

marked the end of: 标志 ...的结束

Key sentence:

The first of the two ships to reach Java after the race had begun was the Thermopylae,...

可改为: after the race had begun the first of the two ships to reach Java was the Thermopylae,...

take the lead: 处于领先地位 == go into the lead

lose the lead: 失去领先地位

in the lead: 处于领先地位(状态)

take over the lead: 取得领先地位

Key sentence:

she was struck by a very heavy storm during which her rudder was torn away.

...was struck by a very heavy storm... 严重地遇到了雨/雪

be caught in the rian/snow 遇到了雨/雪

during 介词,用于关系代词 which 之前, during the race, during the storm

torn away = destroyed, pull down

There is some doubt + wh- ...

Eg.: There is no doubt that he is guilty.

There is some doubt whether he is guilty.

if ---- 与过去事实相反的虚拟

If the Houses of Parliament had not been burned down in 1834, the great clock would never have been erected.

If you talked less and ate more, we would both enjoy our dinner.

take the lead

lose the lead

call in at

with great difficulty

at tremendous speed

It seemed certain that

Lesson 26 Wanted: a large biscuit tin

征购大饼干筒

一、【 Text 】课文

No one can avoid being influenced by advertisements. Much as we may pride ourselves on our good taste, we are no longer free to choose the things we want, for advertising exerts a subtle influence on us. In their efforts to persuade us to buy this or that product, advertisers have made a close study of human nature and have classified all our little weaknesses.

Advertisers discovered years ago that all of us love to get something for nothing. An advertisement which begins with the magic word FREE can rarely go wrong. These days, advertisers not only offer free samples but free cars, free houses, and free trips round the world as well. They devise hundreds of competitions which will enable us to win huge sums of money. Radio and television have made it possible for advertisers to capture the attention of millions of people in this way.

During a radio programme, a company of biscuit manufacturers once asked listeners to bake biscuits and send them to their factory. They offered to pay \$10 a

pound for the biggest biscuit baked by a listener. The response to this competition was tremendous. Before long, biscuits of all shapes and sizes began arriving at the factory. One lady brought in a biscuit on a wheelbarrow. It weighed nearly 500 pounds. A little later, a man came along with a biscuit which occupied the whole boot of his car. All the biscuits that were sent were carefully weighed. The largest was 713 pounds. It seemed certain that this would win the prize. But just before the competition closed, a lorry arrived at the factory with a truly colossal biscuit which weighed 2,400 pounds. It had been baked by a college student who had used over 1,000 pounds of flour, 800 pounds of sugar, 200 pounds of fat, and 400 pounds of various other ingredients. It was so heavy that a crane had to be used to remove it from the lorry. The manufacturers had to pay more money than they had anticipated, for they bought the biscuit from the student for \$24,000.

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

influence v. 影响

pride v. 骄傲

taste n. 鉴赏力

exert v. 施加

subtle adj. 微妙的,难以捉摸的

advertiser n. 做广告的人

classify v. 分类

magic adj. 有奇妙作用的

sample n. 样品

devise v. 设计,想出

capture v. 吸引,赢得

manufacturer n. 生产厂家,制造商

wheelb arrow n. 独轮手推车

boot n. (汽车尾部的)行李箱

ingredient n. 配料

crane n. 起重机

anticipate v. 预期,预料

influence v. 影响

have effect on

Eg.: Literature and art have great influence of people?s idelogy.

Don?t be influenced by bad examples.

under the influence of 受 ...影响

Eg.: We are under the influnce of advertisements.

have influence over sb 有左右某人的能力

Eg.: A teacher has influence over his students.

exercise influence on sb's behalf 为某人而尽力

on sb's behalf 为某人的利益

Eg.: The boss exercises influence on his employee?s behalf.

区别: influence / affect

influence: 通过劝说,行为,榜样来改变一个人的行为或思想,是潜移默化的影响力

affect: 对 ..... 产生不良影响

Eg.: The bad examples will affect a lot number of students .

influential adj. 有影响力的

pride v. 骄傲

pride vt. & n.

pride oneself on 为 ...感到骄傲、夸耀 = take pride in / be proud of

不能用于进行时态或被动语态

Eg.:He prided himself on his driving skill.

pride n.

in the pride of 处于最佳状态(顶峰)

Eg: She is still young and in the pride of her beauty.

put one?s pride in one?s pocket: 控制自尊心

taste n. 鉴赏力

Eg.: She has excellent taste in dress.

have excellent taste in sth 在 ... 上有极高的品位

a taste of 尝一口,尝一点

Eg: Oh,let me have a taste of your coffee.

in good taste: 文雅,得体

Eg: The beautiful girl is in good taste.

in bad taste: 庸俗,不得体

taste: 有什么的味道

to one's taste: 合某人的口味,称某人的心愿

Eg: He did what he wanted to do to his taste.

There is accounting for taste. 人各有所好。

He who has never tasted bitter knows not what is sweet.

不知黄连苦怎知蜂蜜甜呢。

tastabel 可品尝的

tasteful 有鉴赏力的

tasteless 没有味道的,乏味的

taste blindness 味盲

taste maker 时尚的首创者

Eg.: Are you taste maker?

exert v. 施加

exert sth on sb 对某人施加 ...(压力)

Eg.: His wife exerted a lot of pressure on him to change his job.

He likes to exert his authority on us.

exert oneself 努力,尽力

Eg.: He never exerted himself to study hard.

exert every effort 尽一切努力

exertion n.

subtle adj. 微妙的,难以捉摸的

Eg.: Advertisements exert subtle influence on us.

subtle 敏感的,敏锐的

Eg.: He is a subtle observer.

subtly adv. 微妙地,敏锐地

subtleness == subtlety

advertiser n. 做广告的人

advertise: 做广告

advertisement 广告

classify v. 分类

Eg.: The books have been classified according to subjects.

classification n.

classified adj. 分类的,机密的

classifiable adj. 可分类的

classifier n. 分类者

magic adj. 有奇妙作用的

sample n. 样品

devise v. 设计,想出

capture v. 吸引,赢得

Eg.: His wonderful performance captured my attention.

capture 捕获,俘获

Eg.: The police captured the two thieves.

manufacturer n. 生产厂家,制造商

wheelbarrow n. 独轮手推车

boot n. (汽车尾部的)行李箱

ingredient n. 配料

crane n. 起重机

anticipate v. 预期,预料

anticipate / except

anticipate: 预料到

Eg.: Our attack failed because the enemy anticipated.

anticipate: 期待,指望,预料

Eg.:We anticipated the enemy would try to cross the river, so we decided to destory the bridge.

except: 期待,希望某事发生 (不能表示"预料到"这一含义) 期待,指望,anticipate ==except

Eg.: I am not expecting any trouble.

We are anticipating (excepting) a large crowd of people at tonight?s meeting.

He is the man who is always anticipating trouble.

anticipate: 注重强调的内容以高兴和恐惧的心情,期待所想之事或预料之事的发生

Eg.: The students are anticipating a wonderful vocation.

#### 三、【课文精析】

Key sentence:

Advertisements always exert influence on everybody.

No one ,avoid, 双重否定

No students can avoid being influenced by their teachers.

Key sentence:

Much as we may pride ourselves on our good taste, we are no longer free to choose the things we want, for advertising exerts a subtle influence on us.

让步状语从句 , though, although

as 引导让步状语从句,句子要采用倒装形式( adv./n./v. 用在 as 之前)

1 . adj. + as + 主语 + 谓语

Rich as he is, he is not happy.

Tired as I was, I try to help them.

2 . adv. (much ) + as + 从句

Much as I like you, I will not marry you.

Much as I hate do it, I must stay home and study English. 今晚必须呆在家里学习英语。

虽然我不愿意这么做,但我

3 . v. + as + 主语 + 助动词

Try as they may, they will never succeed.

即使他们很努力,但他们不会成功。

Object as my parents may, I decide to do it.

不管我父母怎样反对,我都决定要这样做。

采用不同的句子结构形式,不同的词汇表达同一个语义。

effort

1. n. (U) 努力,竭尽全力 (需要花费脑力和体力的事情)

Eg.: It took a lot of effort to lift the box.

A great deal of effort has gone into this exhibition.

2. n. (C) 努力,竭尽全力 make every effort

Eg.: We are making every effort to study English.

in one?s effort to do: 为了干好某事,在干好某事的努力过程当中

Eg.: The company is selling off some of its buildings in their efforts to save money.

In their efforts to learn English well, they spend a lot of time.

make a close (careful ) study: 对什么做了仔细的研究

Advertisers make every effort in order to sell their products.

The first paragraph is really wonde rful, you?d better keeping your mind

get something for nothing ( free ): 免费得到	
The big bell rare goer wrong.	
these days: 目前	
not only but as well 不仅而且	
devise: 设计 Eg.: They have devised the best way to have the party.	
enable sb. to do:	
Eg.: Hard work will enable you to pass the examinaiton, otherwise, no way.	
Key sentence:	
Radio and television have made it possible for advertisers to capture the attention of millions of people in this way.	
make it possible for sb to do sth 使可能	
Eg.: His fwe material possessions make it possible for him to move from place to place with ease.	
The money he won made it possible for him to make a tour around the world.	

Advertisers discovered years ago that all of us love to get something for nothing.

Key sentence:
The response to this competition was tremendous.
responce = reaction: 反映
before long = soon, shortly
biscuits of all shapes (sizes), shoes of all sizes
occupy = take up, 占据

It seemed certain that....
注意:用 it 做形式主语表示肯定时,要用 certain, 而不能用 sure.
We are sure / certain...
It is certain...
closed = ended

Lesson 27 Nothing to sell and nothing to buy

不卖也不买

# 一、【 Text 】课文

remove = load

It has been said that everyone lives by selling something. In the light of this statement, teachers live by selling knowledge, philosophers by selling wisdom and priests by selling spiritual comfort. Though it may be possible to measure the value of material goods in terms of money, it is extremely difficult to estimate the true value of the services which people perform for us. There are times when we would willingly give everything we possess to save our lives, yet we might grudge paying a surgeon a high fee for offering us precisely this service. The conditions of society are such that skills have to be paid for in the same way that goods are paid for at a shop. Everyone has something to sell.

Tramps seem to be the only exception to this general rule. Beggars almost sell themselves as human beings to arouse the pity of passers-by. But real tramps are not beggars. They have nothing to sell and require nothing from others. In seeking independence, they do not sacrifice their human dignity. A tramp may ask you for money, but he will never ask you to feel sorry for him. He has deliberately chosen to lead the life he leads and is fully aware of the consequences. He may never be sure where the next meal is coming from, but he is free from the thousands of anxieties which afflict other people. His few material possession make it possible for him to move from place to place with ease. By having to sleep in the open, he gets far closer to the world of nature than most of us ever do. He may hunt, beg, or steal occasionally to keep himself alive; he may even in times of real need, do a little work; but he will never sacrifice his freedom We often speak of tramps with contempt and put them in the same class as beggars, but how many of us can honestly say that we have not felt a little envious of their simple way of life and their freedom from care?

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

philosopher n. 哲学家

wisdom n. 智慧

priest n. 牧师

spiritual adj. 精神上的

grudge v. 不愿给,舍不得给

surgeon n. 外科大夫

passer-by (复数 passers-by) n. 过路人

dignity n. 尊严

deliberately adv. 故意地

consequence n. 后果,结果

afflict v. 使苦恼,折磨

ease n. 容易

nature n. 大自然

contempt n. 蔑视

envious adj. 嫉妒的

philosopher n. 哲学家

wisdom n. 智慧

cut sb's wisdom teeth 开始懂事了

priest n. 牧师

spiritual adj. 精神上的

spiritual life

mental :智力的

physical: 物质的,肉体的

spirited: 生机勃勃的,精神饱满的,猛烈的

Eg.:She is a spirited girl.

This is a spirited discussion.

spirituous adj. 含酒精的

grudge v. 不愿给,舍不得给

surgeon n. 外科大夫

passer-by ( 复数 passers-by ) n. 过路人

dignity n. 尊严

with great dignity

stand / keep on one?s dignity

pocket one?s dignity 放下架子

lose one?s dignity 有失体面

dignify v.

dignified adj.

deliberately adv. 故意地

on purpose: 故意,强调目的性

deliberately ( 强调深思熟虑后 )故意的

consequence n. 后果,结果

result: 按常规产生的结果

effect 效果

outcome (比赛)最后结局

in consequence 因此, in consequence of 由于什么的缘故

take the consequence of 承担 ……的后果

afflict v. 使苦恼,折磨

常用于被动语态

affliction n.

afflictive adj. 苦恼的,悲伤的

ease n. 容易

with ease 轻而易举

at ease, 舒服,宽松

He stayed home at ease.

ill at ease 不自在

put sb. at his ease 不拘束

take one's ease 安下心来

I took my ease to study English here.

nature n. 大自然

contempt n. 蔑视

in contempt of 轻视

hold sb. in contempt = look down upon sb.

contemptable adj. 可轻视的,不耻的,卑鄙的

contemptuous adj. 轻视的,傲慢的,轻蔑的

despite

envious adj. 嫉妒的

### 三、【课文精析】

It has been said that = it is said that

据说

live by: to make enough money to feed oneself : 依靠某种职业为生

live on 依靠某种食物维持生命,或靠某人生活

in accordance with: 依据(法律) (更加正式)

in terms of: 按照,就 .....而言,关于

in respect of

in / with regard to, as regards

there are times when 有时

grudge 后面要和名词或动名词搭配

I grudge wasting time on this.

He grudge paying so much money for such bad food.

require from

In seeking independence

in + 动名词搭配,表示 "在……的过程中"

In speeking to him, I found he is stammers.

Eg.: in seeking independence

on + 动名词搭配,表示 "一……就……"必须注意主语的一致性。

Eg.: On seeing the plane coming towards me, I ......

In crossing the hall, I ...

On entering the hall, I...

fully: completely

be free from 不受 .....的影响

He?s leading a life free from care and anxieties.

The old lady is never free from paining.

这位老太太始终病痛缠身。

free from error

free from anxieties.

make it possible for sb. to do sth.

keep oneself alive 为了生存

with 和名词搭配,表示 "具有,带有"

Eg.: How many of us can honestly say that we would like to learn Englsh well?

Lesson 28 Five pounds too dear 五镑太贵

一、【 Text 】课文

Small boats loaded with wares sped to the great liner as she was entering the harbour. Before she had anchored, the men from the boats had climbed on board and the decks were soon covered with colourful rugs from Persia, silks from India, copper coffee pots, and beautiful handmade silverware. It was difficult not to be tempted. Many of the tourists on board had begun bargaining with the tradesmen, but I decided not to buy anything until I had disembarked.

I had no sooner got off the ship than I was assailed by a man who wanted to sell me a diamond ring. I had no intention of buying one, but I could not conceal the fact that I was impressed by the size of the diamonds. Some of them were as big as marbles. The man went to great lengths to prove that the diamonds were real. As we were walking past a shop, he held a diamond firmly against the window and made a deep impression in the glass. It took me over half an hour to get rid of him.

The next man to approach me was selling expensive pens and watches. I examined one of the pens closely. It certainly looked genuine. At the base of the gold cap, the words 'made in the U.S.A.' had been neatly inscribed. The man said that the pen was worth £ 50, but as a special favour, he would let me have it for £ 30. I shook £ 5. my head and held up five fingers indicating that I was willing to pay Gesticulating wildly, the man acted as if he found my offer outrageous, but he eventually reduced the price to £ 10. Shrugging my shoulders, I began to walk away when, a moment later, he ran after me and thrust the pen into my hands. Though he kept throwing up his arms in despair, he readily accepted the £5 I gave him. I felt especially pleased with my wonderful bargain----until I got back to the ship. No matter how hard I tried, it was impossible to fill this beautiful pen with ink and to this day it has never written a single word!

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

wares n. 货物,商品

anchor v. 停航下锚

deck n. 甲板

silverware n. 银器

tempt v. 吸引,引诱

bargain v. 讨价还价

disembark v. 下船上岸

assail v. 纠缠

marble n. 小玻璃球

inscribe v. 刻写,雕

favour n. 好处,优惠

gesticulate v. (讲话时)打手势

outrageous adj. 出人预料的;令人不悦的

wares n. 货物,商品

wares: 货郎随身携带的货物

复合词、表示 '器皿、器具 "

silverware, ironware, glassware, software, hardware, chinaware

goods: 商店里出售的商品

commodity: (正式,总称)商品

commodity price / economy / market / exchange

anchor v. 停航下锚

deck n. 甲板

silverware n. 银器

tempt v. 吸引,引诱

vt. tempt sb. to do sth. 吸引某人做某事

temptation n. 引诱

the temptation to do sth.

tempting adj. 有吸引力的

bargain v. 讨价还价

vi. & n.

a good bargain 好交易

make a bargain 达成协议,做成交易

drive a hard bargain with sb 和某人费力的讨价还价

bargain with sb for sth 和某人就 ……讨价还价

bargain away: 讨价出售,论价出售

disembark v. 下船上岸

=debark 下船上岸

embark 上船

assail v. 纠缠

vt.

He was assailed with worries.

afflict: 困扰

marble n. 小玻璃球

inscribe v. 刻写,雕

favour n. 好处,优惠

in favour of 赞成,支持,有利于

in one's favour 受某人欢迎,得到欢心

out of favour 不利,失宠

The situation both at home and aborad is in our favour.

有利。

by favour of: 烦请面交

do sb. a favour: 给某人以恩惠

Eg.: Can you do me a favour to dance with me ? 能赏光跳支舞吗?

无论是国内外的形势均对我们

favourite: 受到优惠的,优待的

favourable: 赞成的,称赞的

gesticulate v. (讲话时)打手势

outrageous adj. 出人预料的;令人不悦的

He played outrageous joke.

outrage n. 暴行

rage 盛怒,发怒

fly into a rage 勃然大怒

thrust v. 硬塞给

thrust sth. into 塞进

thrust aside 推开

thrust oneself forward 向前挤

thrust oneself in 探听,干涉 ==thrust one?s nose into

Don?t thrust yourself in privacy.

thrust sth. upon sb. 强加于人

Don?t thrust your idea upon me.

thrust sb. out 解雇

三、【课文精析】

five pounds too dear

dear ==expensive, costly

Small boats sped to the great liner---- 主干

loaded with---- 过去分词作定语, "装载,运载 " ( = filled with )

speed: 迅速驶向

speed down hill 向山下疾驶

speed up 向山上疾驶

speed by 迅速驶过

Our holiday speed by.

anchor: 停航下锚

the men from the boats 小船上的人们

be covered with 堆满了

Key sentence:

It was difficult not to tempted. (双重否定)

It was difficult not to tempted by the beautiful shoes.

bargain with 与…… 讨价还价

on board---- 介词短语,修饰 the tourists

not ... until

Eg.: I decided not to do anything until I had got home.

They didn?t reach the school until they had already pass to by two villages.

Key sentence:

I had no sooner got off the ship than I was assailed by a man who wanted to sell me a diamond ring.

表示 "一…就…"的句型有: as soon as, the moment that, on doing, had no sooner than, had hardly when

have no intention of doing sth 不打算做某事

Eg.: I have no intention of changing my mind.

He said that he had no intension of looking for another job.

the fact that---- 同位语从句,不能更改为 which

I can not conceal the fact that... 我不能隐藏这一事实

impress: 给...... 极深的印象

be most impressed by 某人被留下了极深的印象

What impressed me most was 给我印象最深的是

Eg.: What impressed me most was beauty here.

create / give a bad impression on sb. 给 ...... 以不良印象

Eg.:If the shop is untidy, it creates a bad impression on potential of customers.

make a quite impression on sb. 给某人留下极深的印象 Eg.: Your speech made a quite impression on me.

Eg.: He made a deep impression in glass.

印痕

Key sentence:

impression n.

but I could not conceal the fact that I was impressed by the size of the diamonds.

as...as 象 ...... 一样

go to great(considerable, any) lengths 竭尽全力,不惜一切代价

Eg.: He went to great lenghts to pass the examination.

real: 真的,不是捏造出来的,非人工制造的( = genuine )

true: 与事实或现实符合 (false)

genuine: 不是伪造的,非人工制造的(常用来修饰金银、字画、古董 fake )

real reason, real fears, real / genuine money, real / genuine diamond

past ==by 走过

It take sb. sometime to do sth. 花费某人时间做某事

get rid of 摆脱,除去;治好 =cure

He can never get rid of his debts. (~debt ==pay off: 还清)

stain ==wash off 洗净

The next man to approach me: 第二个向我兜售的人,靠近我的人

at the base of 在 .....的底部

as a special favour 作为一种特殊的优惠

for 出价钱

hold up five fingers indicating that...

indicating: 分词作状语, "意思是说 ……"

Eg.: I held up ten fingers indicating that I was willing to pay \$10.

Gesticulating: 现在分词作伴随情况状语

act as if ( 行为、举止 )好像

as if ==as though

outrageous: 感到出乎意料的,令人不能容忍的

eventually ==at last

shrugging---- 现在分词作伴随状况状语

readily ==willingly 心甘情愿地

be pleased with= be satisfied with 对 .....感到满意

No matter how ==however

fill with

to this day==up till now, until now, so far

到目前为止

Lesson 29 Funny or not?

是否可笑?

一、【 Text 】课文

Whether we find a joke funny or not largely depends on where we have been brought up. The sense of humour is mysteriously bound up with national characteristics. A Frenchman, for instance, might find it hard to laugh at a Russian joke. In the same way, a Russian might fail to see anything amusing in a joke which would make an Englishman laugh to tears.

Most funny stories are based on comic situations. In spite of national differences, certain funny situations have a universal appeal. No matter where you live, you would find it difficult not to laugh at, say, Charlie Chaplin's early films. However, a new type of humour, which stems largely from the U.S., has recently come into fashion. It is called sick humour '. Comedians base their jokes on tragic situations like violent death or serious accidents. Many people find this sort of joke distasteful. The following example of 'sick humour' will enable you to judge for yourself.

A man who had broken his right leg was taken to hospital a few weeks before Christmas. From the moment he arrived there, he kept on pestering his doctor to tell him when he would be able to go home. He dreaded having to spend Christmas in hospital. Though the doctor did his best, the patient's recovery was slow. On Christmas day, the man still had his right leg in plaster. He spent a miserable day in bed thinking of all the fun he was missing. The following day, however, the doctor consoled him by telling him that his chances of being able to leave hospital in time for New Year celebrations were good. The man took heart and, sure enough, on New Year's Eve he was able to hobble along to a party. To compensate for his unpleasant experiences in hospital, the man drank a little more than was good for him. In the process, he enjoyed himself thoroughly and kept telling everybody how much he hated hospitals. He was still mumbling something about hospitals at the end of the party when he slipped on a piece of ice and broke his left leg.

二、【 New words and expressions

】生词和短语

largely adv. 在很大程度上

comic adj. 喜剧的,可笑的

universal adj. 普遍的

comedian n. 滑稽演员,喜剧演员

distasteful adj. 讨厌的

pester v. 一再要求,纠缠

dread v. 惧怕

recovery n. 康复

plaster n. 熟石膏

console v. 安慰, 慰问

hobble v. 瘸着腿走

compensate v. 补偿

mumble v. 喃喃而语

largely adv. 在很大程度上

Eg.: He success was largely due to luck.

comic adj. 喜剧的,可笑的

universal adj. 普遍的

universal agent 全权代理人

universal time 世界时

universal joint 万向接头

universality n. 普遍性

universally adv.

Eg.: It universally acknowledged that English is getting more and more important.

universe 宇宙

comedian n. 滑稽演员,喜剧演员

comedy 喜剧

tragedy 悲剧

tragic 悲剧的

comic 喜剧的

distasteful adj. 讨厌的

Eg.: The idea is distasteful to me.

distastefully adv.

pester v. 一再要求,纠缠

==assail (l28)

pester sb. to do

pester sb. with

Eg.: He contunually pesters his boss with demands.

pester sb. for sth.

dread v. 惧怕

后面可以跟名词、动名词、不定式搭配连用

Eg.: We were dreading his arrival. 我们正担心他来呢。

I dread to think what will happened if she find out.

He dread having to meet his parents.

dreadful adj.
dreaded
in dread of
fear 一般的恐惧
horrify 使恐怖,使极度恐惧
recovery n. 康复
plaster n. 熟石膏
console v. 安慰,慰问
Eg.: He is consoling his friend in grief for the loss of child.
hobble v.   瘸着腿走
compensate v. 补偿
mumble v. 喃喃而语

# 三、【课文精析】

Key sentence:

I found it difficult to finish the work in a day.

此句话是文章的 topic

be based on: 以 .....作为基础

It was difficult not to be tempted

Stem from, come from, arise from, originate from

His feeling of hate stems from envy

Her interest in flowers stemed from her childhood in the country

come into fashion 开始流行

come into being 开始形成

come into power 开始执政

Key sentence:

Comedians base their jokes on tragic situations like violent death or serious accidents.

Some funny stories are based on tragic situations.

Key sentence:

From the moment he arrived at party, he enjoyed himself very much.

keep doing sth. 不间断的,不停的做某事

keep on doing sth. 反复、重复干某事 (中间可以有短暂的暂停 ) (keep: vi.)

Don?t keep on asking silly q uestions.

He kept smoking all the while.

He kept on smoking all the while.

keep + 宾语 + 动词 ing 形式, keep on 不能用于该句型

He kept me waiting for an hour. I?m sorry to have kept you waiting so long. dread to do ==dread doing a miserable day: a terrible day 想到,想起,想着 think of When I saw you I thought of my sister. think of doing sth. He is thinking of setting up a school. spend time doing sth. by 通过某种方式手段 dread to do = dread doing a miserable day: a terrible day 想到,想起,想着 think of: When I saw you I thought of my sister. think of doing sth. He is thinking of setting up a school. spend time doing sth. by: 通过某种方式手段 I arrived here by train.

在表达可能性这个语句的时候,经常采用复数形式 chances of My chances of passing the examination are good. It is quite possible for me to pass the examination. His chances of being dismissed are good. 做 .....可能性极大 / 极小 his chances of doing sth. are good. / remote remote His chances of arriving here by bicycle are remote. slight He took heart when he got the good news. lose heart: 失去信心,失去勇气 The cake is more than I can eat. mecessary, gook, possible, anticipate, expect, feel, suggest, report, require, think He eats more than is good for him. as He arrived as I expected. / He arrived as was expected. He eats just as much as is good for him. He eats more than is good for him. The man drank just as much was good for him. She is quite fat. ==She isn?t right fat.

Yesterday I went swimming. In the process, I had a very good time.

I was lookingfor yourhouse and got lostin the process.

keep telling ==keep on telling

how much ----to what extent

How much can I trust him?

when: at that moment

Lesson 30 The death of a ghost

幽灵之死

一、【 Text 】课文

For years villagers believed that Endley farm was haunted. The farm was owned by two brothers, Joe and Bob Cox. They employed a few farm hands, but no one was willing to work there long. Every time a worker gave up his job, he told the sam story. Farm labourers said that they always woke up to find the work had been done overnight. Hay had been cut and cow sheds had been cleaned. A farm worker, who stayed up all night, claimed to have seen a figure cutting corn in the moonlight. In time, it became an accepted fact that the Cox brothers employed a conscientious ghost that did most of their work for them.

No one suspected that there might be someone else on the farm who had never been seen. This was indeed the case. A short time ago, villagers were astonished to learn that the ghost of Endley had died. Everyone went to the funeral, for the 'ghost' was none other than Eric Cox, a third brother who was supposed to have died as a young man. After the funeral, Joe and Bob revealed a secret which they had kept for over forty years.

Eric had been the eldest son of the family, very much older than his two brothers. He had been obliged to join the army during the Second World War. As he hated army life he decided to desert his regiment. When he learnt that he would be sent abroad, he returned to the farm and his farther hid him until the end of the war. Fearing the

authorities, Eric remained in hiding after the war as well. His father told everybody that Eric had been killed in action. The only other people who knew the secret were Joe and Bob. They did not even tell their wives. When their father died, they thought it their duty to keep Eric in hiding. All these years, Eric had lived as a recluse. He used to sleep during the day and work at night, quite unaware of the fact that he had become the ghost of Endley. When he died, however, his brothers found it impossible to keep the secret any longer.

【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

labourer n. 劳动者

overnight adv. 一夜之间

hay n. 干草

corn n. 谷物

moonlight n. 月光

conscientious adj. 认真的

suspect v. 怀疑

desert v. (军队中)开小差

regiment n. (军队)团

action n. 战斗

recluse n. 隐士

labourer n. 劳动者

labourer 特别强调使用体力,而不是技能;户外工作

workman 指具有某种工艺技能的半熟练工人

worker 泛指,暗示具有更高的技术水平,通常指脑力劳动者

farmhand 农场雇工,农业工人 ; farm labourer

一夜之间 overnight adv. 干草 hay n. 谷物 corn n. 月光 moonlight n. conscientious adj. 认真的 a conscientious teacher conscious adj. 意识到的 , 清楚的 怀疑 suspect v. 怀疑 to believe to be true or likely suspect vt. I suspected him of stealing the car. suspected that He suspected that his girlfriend tried to hide her true feelings. suspect sb. to be I suspect him to be a spy. 怀疑, 表示否定的语意 doubt I doubt whether he is a liar. / I suspect that he is a liar. I doubt the truth of his statement. suspicious adj.

desert v. (军队中)开小差

suspicion n.

Cats are suspicious of human beings.

猜疑,怀疑

desert vt. run away without permission

The soldier deserted his army.

We sheltered from the storm in a deserted hut.

abandon 放弃

desert 违背法律、道义、责任、信仰

desert the army, desert school, desert his duty, desert his family

abandon 被迫放弃所感兴趣或所负责任的东西。

He had to abandon his favorite research because of the war.

forsake vt. 放弃,抛弃,与 .....脱离关系

Eg.: He forsook his family.

discard v. 放弃,丢弃: give up as useless

Eg.: everyday we discard a large amount of rubbish.

regiment n. (军队)团

action n. 战斗

recluse n. 隐士

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

# 三、【课文精析】

It is said the public house was haunted.

haunt: visit somewhere very often

He haunted this cinema.

own == possess the farm was possessed by two brothers. be willing to ==be ready to do 引导时间状语从句 every time ==whenever Every time I listen to his advice, I get into trouble. Whenever I listen to his advice, I get into trouble. wake up to find that 醒过来的时候,结果却发现 to 不定式做结果状语 He woke up to find that he was surrounded by a large crowd of people. He hurried to the post office only to find that it was shut. and 平行句式结构 hay 干草 A farm worker, who ..., claimed to 句子主干: A farm worker claimed to claim to have done claim to have done 声称做过某事

see sb. doing sth. 看见某人正在做某事

Eg: He claimed to have seen the puma.

Seamen claimed to have seen monsters.

who 引导非限制性定语从句,补充说明 a farm worker

These young people, who love the peace of the moutains, always receive a warm welcome at Salnt Bernard Monastery.

stay up: not to go to bed

I stayed up last night

The boy sat up to see the film.

wait up for/sit up for 为了等待某人回来而不睡觉

Don?t wait up for me, I?ll be home very late.

burn the midnight oil 开夜车

Eg: I have to burn the midnight oil tonight to complete work.

in time 最后,终于

It became an accepted fact that

变成一个大家都接受的事实

that 引导同位语从句,补充说明 fact

同位语补充说明先行词的内涵

An idea came to her that she might do the experiment in another way.

Everybody had already accepted the fact that the puma is still at large.

It becomes an accepted fact that eht puma is still at large.

that 引导定语从句

No one suspected that			
someone else who had neer been seen			
be astonished = be surprised			
astonish, surprise, amaze, astound			
be astonished to do sth.			
I?m not surprised to see he is still as fat as before.			
for == as 是对全句的补述			
none other than == no other than 强调结构,表示不是别人而正是			
Eg: The man who had sent the flowers was none other than the man she had spoken to the night before.			
It was no other than my old friend Johnson.			
The man who snoke to her was none other than her husband			
The man who spoke to her was none other than her husband.			
nothing else than 仅仅			
nothing else than 仅仅 Eg: His failiure was due to nothing else than his own carelessness.			
nothing else than 仅仅			

He was supposed to have died 20 years before.

保密 keep secret 揭露秘密,披露秘密 reveal secret The press revealed the scandal. He kept secret for a long time. he kept it to himself for a long time. 用来加强语气 very much : much 被迫做某事 be obliged to do = be forced to do He had been in hiding... Fearing the authorities... 现在分词引导原因状语 in hiding = in concealment he remained in hiding at home... 仅知道的人 the only other people who knew the secret 仅完成这项工作的人 the only other people who finished the work they thought it their duty to... it 形式宾语 I thought it very difficult to pass this examination. We all think it our duty to support our parents. 形式宾语 it 和宾语补足语直接搭配连用,宾语补足语可以是名词或形容词

形容词短语做状语,进一步补充说明全句

quite unaware of the fact that...

that 引导同位语从句

We amass requisites quite unaware of the fact.

amass 收藏,积聚

his brothers found it impossible to do...

it 形式宾语

It is quite impossible to finish the hard work in 2 hours.

I found it quite impossible to finish the hard work in 2 hours.

Lesson 31 A lovable eccentric

可爱的怪人

一、【 Text 】课文

True eccentrics never deliberately set out to draw attention to themselves. They disregard social conventions without being conscious that they are doing anything extraordinary. This invariably wins them the love and respect of others, for they add colour to the dull routine of everyday life.

Up to the time of his death, Richard Colson was one of the most notable figures in our town. He was a shrewd and wealthy businessman, but most people in the town hardly knew anything about this side of his life. He was known to us all as Dickie and his eccentricity had become legendary long before he died.

Dickie disliked snobs intensely. Though he owned a large car, he hardly ever used it, preferring always to go on foot. Even when it was raining heavily, he refused to carry an umbrella. One day, he walked into an expensive shop after having been caught in a particularly heavy shower. He wanted to buy a £ 300 watch for his wife, but he was in such a bedraggled condition that an assistant refused to serve him.

Dickie left the shop without a word and returned carrying a large cloth bag. As it was extremely heavy, he dumped it on the counter. The assistant asked him to leave, but Dickie paid no attention to him and requested to see the manager. Recognizing who the customer was, the manager was most apologetic and 'reprimanded the assistant severely. When Dickie was given the watch, he presented the assistant

£ 300 in pennies. He insisted on the assistant's counting the money before he left---- 30,000 pennies in all! On another occasion, he invited a number of important critics to see his private collection of modern paintings. This exhibition received a great deal of attention in the press, for though the pictures were supposed to be the work of famous artists, they had in fact been painted by Dickie. It took him four years to stage this elaborate joke simply to prove that critics do not always know what they are talking about.

## 二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

lovable adj. 可爱的

eccentric n. (行为) 古怪的人

disregard v. 不顾,漠视

convention n. 习俗,风俗

conscious adj. 感觉到的,意识到的

invariably adv. 总是,经常地

routine n. 常规;惯例

shrewd adj. 精明的

eccentricit y n. 怪僻

legendary adj. 传奇般的

snob n. 诌上欺下的人

intensely adv. 强烈地

bedraggled adj 拖泥带水的

dump v. 把 ......砰的一声抛下

apologetic adj. 道歉的

reprimand v. 训斥

stage v. 暗中策划

elaborate adj. 精心构思的

lovable adj. 可爱的

lovable == worthy of love

lovely = beautiful 可爱的

lovable 惹人爱

Eg: What he does is lovable.

I like the lovely boy/girl.

A large number of eccentrics are lovable.

许多怪人惹人喜爱。

eccentric n. (行为)古怪的人

eccentric: a person whose behaviou is peculiar, unusual, rather strange.

eccentric: adj. peculiar, unusual; strange

strange 因为陌生而奇怪

Eg.: The modern building looks strange to the villages.

eccentric 行为举止古怪

Eg.: I can?t get on well with him, because he is eccentric.

odd 强调因为少见而多怪

Eg.: Look, he is wearing an odd hat.

peculiar 奇异的,不同寻常的

The house is peculiar.

I feel peculiar today. ==I feel uncomfortable / ill. == I?m not myself today.

eccentricity n. 怪癖

disregard v. 不顾, 漠视

disregard: ignore; pay no attention to

Disregard noise and keep working

disregard n.

have disregard of / for

He has complete disregard of / for my feelings.

in disregard of

He did the work in disregard of my instructions.

treat sb. with disregard 怠慢某人

Anyway, don?t treat your friends with disregard.

convention n. 习俗,风俗

convention: generally accepted practice.

Shaking hands when meeting people is normal convention in China.

custom 历史悠久的社会习俗

It?s a custom of giving presents at Christmas.

He always does exactly what he wants and does not care about convention.

practice 某团体的传统做法或令他人无法接受的习俗

Eg.: The normal practice in the company is to send bill as soon as the job is done.

Your stomach would turn at the idea of frying potatoes in animal fat--the normally accepted practice in many northern countries.( 三册 L23)

tradition 传统

Spending Christmas Day is a tradition for western people.

habit 个人习惯

I have a habit of reading English aloud in the morning.

conscious adj. 感觉到的,意识到的

conscious ==aware

be conscious of / that

be aware of / that

He is quite unaware of the danger.

He is not conscious of the danger.

class conscious 有阶级意识的

family conscious 有家庭观念的

clothes conscious 注重衣着的

stairs conscious 注重地位的

aware, conscious 的反义词直接加 un-

unaware, unconscious

subconscious 下意识的

consciousness n.

invariably adv. 总是,经常地

routine n. 常规;惯例

routine: the regular fixed way of sth. / doing things

follow the routine 墨守常规

break the routine 打破常规

start the daily routine 开始每天的日常生活

shrewd adj. 精明的

shrewed: showing good practical judgement

精明的,狡滑的,敏锐的,机灵的

He is a shrewed observer.

We have got shrewed common sense.

Sb. is shrewed. == He has good judgement.

shrewed brained

shrewed headed 头脑机灵的

shrewed looking 看起来机灵的

L31-02 end 11?26 "

L31-03 begin 11?00 "

cunning: clever at deceiving 善于歉骗的

sly 用更隐秘的办法来达到目的

a sly old fox

eccentricity n. 怪僻

legendary adj. 传奇般的

intensely adv. 强烈地

intense adj. very strong; violent; extreme; sharp; etc.

intense cold 严寒

intense discussion 激烈的讨论

intensify vt. 使增强

You must intensify your sense of responsibility. 你必须加强责任感。

intensity n.

Losing jobs are growing in intensity.

sth are growing i n intensity .(.某种程度)在加强

Eg: Losing jobs are growing in intensity.

bedraggled adj 拖泥带水的

dump v. 把 ......砰的一声抛下

reprimand v. 训斥

reprimand: scold officially and severely

blame 责备(语气程度很弱)

Eg.: The teacher blamed him for his coming late.

scold 斥责(语气稍重一点)

Don?t scold me for a trifle.

reproach 斥责 (语气最严重 )

He often reproached his children.

reprimand: scold officially and severely

The boss reprimanded his employees severely.

apologetic adj. 道歉的

apologize v.	
He apologized to his boss.	
The boss apologized to his employees.	
He was apologetic. 他致以歉意	
apology n. 歉意	
make apology to sb. for sth.	
stage v. 暗中策划	
He stage a joke.	
elaborate adj. 精心构思的	
elaborate == carefully worked out	
an elaborate design 精心的设计	
elaborate vt.	
He elaborated a system of computer.	
三、【课文精析】	
deliberately: on purpose	
set out to do = set about doing = start doing / to do sth.	
draw attention to 吸引对 的注意	
capture/attract/hold/catch/arrest/receive/draw attention to	吸引对的注意力

He made a mistake without being conscious of the fact

Her fine character quickly won her the friendship of her colleagues		
win sb sth   为某人赢得		
add colour to 增添色彩		
Eccentrics add colour to our dull life.		
up to the time of his death: before he died.	完成时	
notable: famous		
this side of his life  生活的这一面		
Dickie disliked snobs intensely / violently		
preferring 现在分词做伴随状况状语		
be caught in a heavy shower 進	<b>過到瓢泼大雨</b>	
be caught in a heavy snow 造	遇到大雪	
be caught in a heavy storm 遇到	到风暴	
pay no attention to sb = ignore sb = take note 不予理睬	o notice of sb = turn a deaf ear to sb 对	
Dickie took no notice of him		
dickie turned a deaf ear to him.		
refuse to listen to		

invariably = always

求见(非常正式而有礼貌的用词,语气相当强烈,假如你 request 某件东西的话,通 request 常你有权利得到你想要的。) I requested the headmaster. Every student can request assistance of their teachers.? 在语气上还要强烈,假如你 demand 某件东西的话,你坚决认为你有权利得到你想 demand 要的,且不愿意接受否定的回答。 I demand my rights. 我要求我的权力。 ask 口头或写信介到某物 I asked to get the book. he asked me for help. realizing or recognizing 在这里现在分词做原因状语 most = very much 把..... 交给 present sb. with sth. or present sth. to sb. insist on doing / insist that He insisted that the shop assistant should count the money before he left.

引起了报界广泛注意

receive a great deal of attention in the press

胡说八道

说正经话

simply to prove = only to prove

talk nonsense

talk sense

## 一、【 Text 】课文

The salvage operation had been a complete failure. The small ship, Elkor, which had been searching the Barents Sea for weeks, was on its way home. A radio message from the mainland had been received by the ship's captain instructing him to give up the search. The captain knew that another attempt would be made later, for the sunken ship he was trying to find had been carrying a precious cargo of gold bullion.

Despite the message, the captain of the Elkor decided to try once more. The sea bed was scoured with powerful nets and there was tremendous excitement on board when a chest was raised from the bottom. Though the crew were at first under the impression that the lost ship had been found, the contents of the chest proved them wrong. What they had in fact found was a ship which had been sunk many years before.

The chest contained the personal belongings of a seaman, Alan Fielding. There were books, clothing and photographs, together with letters which the seaman had once received from his wife. The captain of the Elkor ordered his men to salvage as much as possible from the wreck. Nothing of value was found, but the numerous items which were brought to the surface proved to be of great interest. From a heavy gun that was raised, the captain realized that the ship must have been a cruiser. In another chest, which contained the belongings of a ship's officer, there was an unfinished letter which had been written on March 14th, 1943. The captain learnt from the letter that the name of the lost ship was the Karen. The most valuable find of all was the ship's log book, parts of which it was still possible to read. From this the captain was able to piece together all the information that had come to light. The Karen had been sailing in a convoy to Russia when she was torpedoed by an enemy submarine. This was later confirmed by a naval official at the Ministry of Defence after the Elkor had returned home. All the items that were found were sent to the War Museum.

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

salvage v. 救助,营救;打捞

Barents n. 巴伦支(海)

sunken adj. 沉没的

cargo n. 货物

bullion n. 金条;银条

scour v. 彻底搜索

chest n. 大箱子

contents n. (复数)所装的东西

belongings n. (复数)所有物

item n. 物件

cruiser n. 巡洋舰

ifid n. 找到的物品

log book 航海日志

piece v. 拼成整体

convoy n. 护航

torpedo v. 用鱼雷攻击

submarine n. 潜水艇

naval adj. 海军的

ministry n. (政府的)部

salvage v. 救助,营救;打捞

salvage goods from the fire

salvage the patient

salvage your time 节省时间

salvage archaelogy 抢救性考古

salvage boat 救助船

salvage money 救助费,打捞费

Barents n. 巴伦支(海)

sunken adj. 沉没的

cargo n. 货物

cargo: the goods carried by ship; plane or vehicle

Eg.: The ship has a cargo of 1,000 tons

cargo vessel

goods: the goods carried by plane or train

也可以做形容词,只能表示铁路运输,常指商

店里的的商品。

Eg.: Trains are used to carry goods and passengers.

A goods train

bullion n. 金条;银条

scour v. 彻底搜索

go through

The house has been searched / scoured for the hidden bullion.

scour / search / hunt (都可与 for 搭配,表示目的)

search 指寻找丢失的东西或被认为是存在的东西,比 look for 更正式

hunt 指漫无边际的寻找急需要的东西

scour 表示彻底地搜查一个特定范围并暗示花费更大的力气

Eg.: I have been searching everywhere, but I can?t find the key.

We spent a week hunting for the puma.

They scoured the woods for the child.

scour / search / hunt (都可与 for 搭配,表示目的)

chest n. 大箱子

chest: a large strong box in which valuable objects are kept

case 衣箱(总称)

suitcase 手提箱

safe 保险箱

trunk 汽车尾箱

dustbin 垃圾箱

contents n. (复数)所装的东西

belongings n. (复数)所有物

item n. 物件

cruiser n. 巡洋舰

find n. 找到的物品

find: Something good or valuable

Eg.: the little restaurant is quite a find.

The garden is a good find.

log book 航海日志

piece v. 拼成整体

part / a piece of cake / a piece of news

piece: put parts together to form a whole

piece together 拼揍

Eg.: They piece the log book together.

piece up 修补,拼合

Please piece up the dress.

piece a quilt

convoy n. 护航

in convoy 护航

under convoy: 被护航

torpedo v. 用鱼雷攻击

submarine n. 潜水艇

前缀 sub-

1. 下

subway 地铁

substructure 下层建筑

subsoil 下层土

subnormal 低于正常的

2.次;准;亚

subtripics

subcollege

subcontinent

3. 副;分支;下级;下属

subeditor 副编辑

subagent 副代理人

subhead 副标题

suboffice 分办事处

4.接近的

subadult 接近成人的

subteen 将近十三岁的

subequal 接近相等的

5.再

subdived 再分

sublet 转租

subculture 再培养

naval adj. 海军的

navy 海军

naval port 军港

naval power 制海权

voyage 海上航行

navigation 航海术

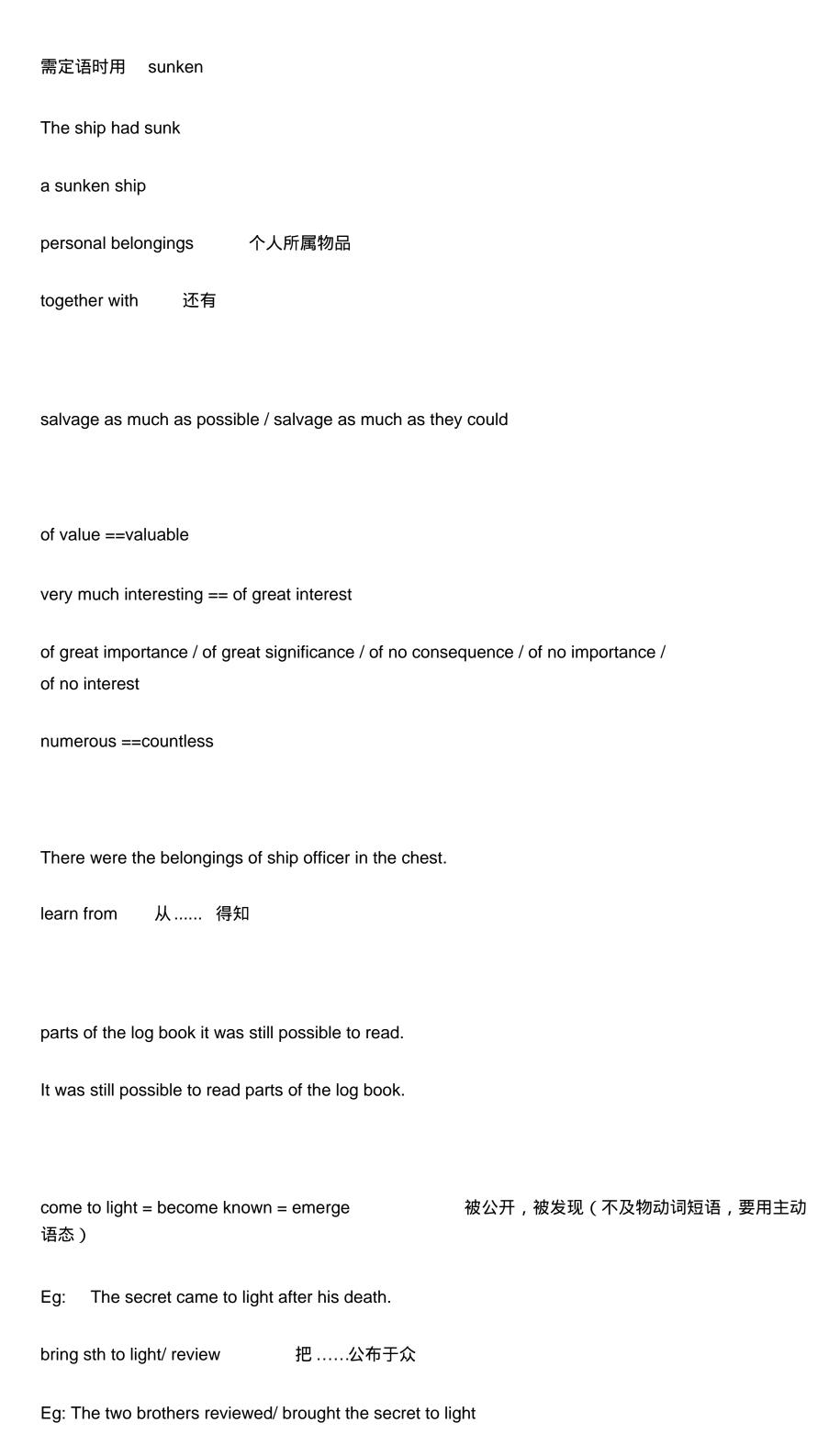
navigate v. 航海,航行

ministry n. (政府的)部

## 三、【课文精析】

The salvage operation had been a complete failure. My examination is a complete failure. 这次考试完全失败了。 Their experiment had been a complete failure. Key sentence: A radio message from the mainland had been received by the ship's captain instructing him to give up the search. The shop?s captain received a radio message from the mainland instructing him to give up the search. 命令某人做某事 instruct sb. to do sth. The editor sent a fax to the journalist instructing him to get statistics. make another attempt despite ==in spite of try once more 代替了 make another attempt 书面语 There is tremendous excitement 口语) People on board felt excited. ( There was tremendous excitement before the game. under the impression that == thinking that I am under the impression that he is the manager of the store. He is under the impression that you? Il help him.

sunken / sunk



in a convoy 护航

under a convoy 被护航

confirmed == made sure

Lesson 33 A day to remember

难忘的一天

一、【 Text 】课文

We have all experienced days when everything goes wrong. A day may begin well enough, but suddenly everything seems to get out of control. What invariably happens is that a great number of things choose to go wrong at precisely the same moment. It is as if a single unimportant event set up a chain of reactions. Let us suppose that you are preparing a meal and keeping an eye on the baby at the same time. The telephone rings and this marks the prelude to an unforeseen series of catastrophes. While you are on the phone, the baby pulls the tablecloth off the table smashing half your best crockery and cutting himself in the process. You hang up hurriedly and attend to baby, crockery, etc. Meanwhile, the meal gets burnt. As if this were not enough to reduce you to tears, your husband arrives, unexpectedly bringing three guests to dinner.

Things can go wrong on a big scale as a number of people recently discovered in Parramatta, a suburb of Sydney. During the rush hour one evening two cars collided and both drivers began to argue. The woman immediately behind the two cars happened to be a learner. She suddenly got into a panic and stopped her car. This made the driver following her brake hard. His wife was sitting beside him holding a large cake. As she was thrown forward, the cake went right through the windscreen and landed on the road. Seeing a cake flying through the air, a lorry driver who was drawing up alongside the car, pulled up all of a sudden. The lorry was loaded with empty beer bottles and hundreds of them slid off the back of the vehicle and on to the road. This led to yet another angry argument. Meanwhile, the traffic piled up behind. It took the police nearly an hour to get the traffic on the move again. In the meantime, the lorry driver had to sweep up hundreds of broken bottles. Only two stray dogs benefited from all this confusion, for they greedily devoured what was left of the cake. It was just one of those days!

prelude n. 序幕,前奏

unforeseen adj. 意料之外的

series n. 系列

catastrophe n. 大祸,灾难

crockery n. 陶器,瓦器

suburb n. 郊区

collide v. 猛撞

learner n. 初学者

panic n. 惊慌,恐慌

windscreen n. (汽车的)挡风玻璃

alongside prep. 在.....的旁边,与 ......并排

slide v. 滑

stray adj. 离群的

confusion n. 混乱

greedily adv. 贪婪地

devour v. 狼吞虎咽地吃

prelude n. 序幕,前奏

a prelude to sth 的前奏

Eg: a prelude to serious trouble 麻烦的前奏

introduction 导言,绪论

introduction to the book

preface 序,前言

foreword 序

unforeseen adj. 意料之外的

foresee == see before hand

I foresee a bright future for you.

foreseeable 可预见的

foreseeing 预料之中的

unforeseeing 意料之外的

foretell 预言,主语可以是人或物

predict 预言,预示(语气较强),主语必须是人

Eg: He predicted that it would happen in ten years.

forecast: 预测,预报(主要指天气的预报)

Eg: Timely snow foretells a bumper harvest. 瑞雪照丰年

series n. 系列

series 单复数形式同形

a series of

We?ve got a series of good harvest.

chain 连串,连锁

a chain of 一系列

chain store 连锁店,

chain reaction 连锁反应

chain smoker 吸烟很严重的人

succession 侧重时间上的连续

Eg.: We?ve got a succession of successes.

string 连续不断相似的事件

Eg.: a string of cars 一连串的汽车

train 一个接一个发生的事

a train of thoughts/ ideas 一个个的想法

catastrophe n. 大祸,灾难

worldwide catastrophe 世界范围的灾难

national catastrophe 波及全国的灾难

disaster 灾难,不幸(语气较弱)

calamity 灾害,不幸事件

nature calamity 自然灾害

crockery n. 陶器,瓦器

suburb n. 郊区

collide v. 猛撞

learner n. 初学者

panic n. 惊慌,恐慌

panic: uncontrollable quickly spreading fear or terror

get into a panic 陷入惊慌之中

He suddenly got into a panic and stop his car.

be struck with panic== be seized with panic 惊慌失措

He was seized with panic.

terror 惊骇

horror 恐惧

fright 害怕

alarm 惊恐

windscreen n. (汽车的)挡风玻璃

alongside prep. 在 .....的旁边 , 与 ......并排

slide v. 滑

stray adj. 迷失的,离群的

The dog strayed from home.

confusion n. 混乱

condition out of order

in order 秩序井然

out of order 混乱

in confusion 乱七八糟

be covered with confusion 局促不安

throw sb into confusion 使某人惊慌失措

greedily adv. 贪婪地

devour v. 狼吞虎咽地吃

devour:
1. eat like an animal
The dog devoured the cake
2. destroy   吞灭,席卷
The flames devoured the whole building
3. take in eagerly with eyes, ears, or mind 贪婪地看
His eyes devoured the scene. 他两眼贪婪地看着。
三、【课文精析】
Every dog has its day 每个人都会有飞黄腾达的日子
get out of control 失控
uncontrollable, beyond control
invariably: always
What happened yesterday was that he couldn?t deal with the hot potato.
precisely: exactly
It is as if
It seems as if
It looks as if
似乎好象看起来

set up = cause 引起,导致,造成

What set up the accident?

set up a world record 创世界纪录

set up = creat 创立,建立

The unimportant event is the prelude to trouble.

不重要的事情是麻烦事的前奏。

keep an eye on tha baby 照料孩子

keep an eye on = look after = take care of

Please keep an eye on my bouse while I am out.

keep one?s eyes open 睁大眼睛

When I am out, please keep your eyes open.

have an eye to

eye for eye 以牙还牙

have eyes only for 只要,只爱

Eg: I have eyes only for you.

look sb in the eyes 两眼直视某人

eye to eye with sb 与某人看法完全一样

Eg: I invariably see eye to eye with my sister.

turn a blind eye to sth. 对 .....视而不见

Eg: He even turned blind eye to me.

make eyes at sb 含情报脉脉地看着某人

Eg: The boy is making eyes at his girlfriend.

on teh phone = answer the phone

```
pull off
        拉下来
pick off 取下来
           碰落下来
knock off
             摔成两半
smash half
in the process
                 在这个过程中
hang up == put on the receiver
attend to == look after == deal with
Please attend to my baby.
Excuse me, I have something urgent to attend to.
reduce you to tears.
                  名词: 迫使某人处于 .....状态
reduce sb to +
Eg: You almost reduce me to tears.
His comforting words almost reduced his wife to tears.
His answer reduced me to silence.
The bomb reduced the city to ruins.
we can draw a conclusion.
Everything seems to get out of control suddenly and a great number of things
choose to go wrong at precisely the same moment.
on a big scale == to a great degree == to great extent
as 引导非限制性定语从句(二册已详细说过)
```

Troubles never come single 祸不单行

as we know 众所周知

As we know, the earth is round.

As brane pointed out, giving up smoking is the easiest thing to do in the world.

As the headmaster mentioned, one is never too old to learn.

as 重点突出整个句子的含义,而 which 有可能指代主句当中的某个词汇,也有可能指代整个句子的含义。

As we expected, John was admitted to the university.

She married him, which was unexpected.

She married him as (was ) unexpected.

The material is elastic as shown in the figure.

The material is elactic which is shown in the figure.

during the rush hour 上下班高峰期

It happened that the woman behind the two cars was a learner.

happen to do 恰巧

I happened to hear the news.

It happened that I heard about it the day before yesterday.

following 现在分词做定语

right ==straight

draw up ==pull up 停车

all of sudden ==suddenly

was loaned with == was filled with

lead to == cause

meanwhile == at the same time 与此同时

get the traffic on the move 使得车辆开动起来

on the move == move from place to place

on the rise 正在上升

on the boil 正在沸腾

on the go 正在忙碌中

on the watch 正在监视

on the turn 正在转变中

on thw run 正在逃跑中

on thw fly 正在飞行中

on the decrease 正在减少

benefit from 从 ..... 得益

You benefit a lot from your reading.

Lesson 34 A happy discovery

幸运的发现

一、【 Text 】课文

Antique shops exert a peculiar fascination on a great many people. The more expensive kind of antique shop where rare objects are beautifully displayed in glass cases to keep them free from dust is usually a forbidding place. But no one has to

muster up courage to enter a less pretentious antique shop. There is always hope that in its labyrinth of musty, dark, disordered rooms a real rarity will be found amongst the piles of assorted junk that litter the floors.

No one discovers a rarity by chance. A truly dedicated bargain hunter must have patience, and above all, the ability to recognize the worth of something when he sees it. To do this, he must be at least as knowledgeable as the dealer. Like a scientist bent on making a discovery, he must cherish the hope that one day he will be amply rewarded.

My old friend, Frank Halliday, is just such a person. He has often described to me how he picked up a masterpiece for a mere £ 50. One Saturday morning, Frank visited an antique shop in my neighbourhood. As he had never been there before, he found a great deal to interest him. The morning passed rapidly and Frank was about to leave when he noticed a large packing case lying on the floor. The dealer told him that it had just come in, but that he could not be bothered to open it. Frank begged him to do so and the dealer reluctantly prised it open. The contents were disappointing. Apart from an interesting-looking carved dagger, the box was full of crockery, much of it broken. Frank gently lifted the crockery out of the box and suddenly noticed a miniature Painting at the bottom of the packing case. As its composition and line reminded him of an Italian painting he knew well, he decided to buy it. Glancing at it briefly, the dealer told him that it was worth could hardly conceal his excitement, for he knew that he had made a real discovery. The tiny painting proved to be an unknown masterpiece by Correggio and was worth thousands of pounds.

£ 50. Frank

二、【 New words and expressions

】生词和短语

antique n. 古玩

fascination n. 魅力,迷惑力

forbidding adj. 望而生畏的,望而却步的

muster v. 鼓起

pretentious adj. 自命不凡的,矫饰的

labyrinth n. 迷宫

musty adj. 陈腐的,发霉的

rarity n. 稀世珍品

assorted adj. 各式各样的

junk n. 破料货,废品

litter v. 杂乱地布满

dedicated adj. 专心致志的

bargain hunter 到处找便宜货买的人

dealer v. 商人

cherish v. 期望,渴望

amply adv. 足够地

masterpiece n. 杰作

mere adj. 仅仅的

prise v. 撬开

carve v. 镌刻

dagger n. 短剑,匕首

miniature adj. 小巧的,小型的

Composition n. 构图

antique n. 古玩

fascination n. 魅力,迷惑力

the power of fascinating

for / over / on

Cats have unfailing fascination for most people

Chinese Art has great fascination for me

have fascination for sb.	
fascinate	
fascinate: attract or interest very strongly	
Cats never fail to fascinate human being.	
English never fail to fascinate students.	
fascinated by / with sth.	
He is fascinated with chess.	
The students were fascinated by his idea.	
charm	
The beautiful picture charms me.	
I am charmed by the beautiful picture.	
captivate	
His idea captivated me.	
enchant 使… 迷惑	
She was enchanted by the flower you sent her.	
fascinate, charm, captivate, enchant	后直接加 ing, 变成形容词
fascinating, charming, captivating, enchanting	表示,有吸引力的?
She is a charming girl.	
Cats are fascinating animals.	
The flowers are enchanting.	
winning 吸引人的(主要指物品)	
Eg: The beautiful dresses is winning.	

forbidding adj. 望而生畏的,望而却步的

having a unfriendly or danger look

He has got a forbidding appearance.

We?d better not visit the forbidding coast.

forbid

forbid sb to do sth 禁止做某事

Eg: The father forbid his children to touch the clavichord.

forbid doing sth 禁止做 .....事

Smoking is forbidden here.

the Forbidden City

Forbidden fruit

Forbidden zone

forbid, prohibit, interdict

forbid: 政府或私人下令以禁止

Swimming is forbidden here.

prohibit 法律条文或官方明令禁止

The law prohibits young people under 18 from going to bar.

interdict 法律或教会所不允许

muster v. 鼓起

collect, summon

muster up / collect up / summon up ==gather / pluck up / keep up

He mustered up his courage and walked up to the girl.

pretentious adj. 自命不凡的,矫饰的

We won?t like to visit t he pretentious shop.

pretend

pretension n. 要求,虚荣,虚荣心

labyrinth n. 迷宫

musty adj. 陈腐的,发霉的

rarity n. 稀世珍品

assorted adj. 各式各样的

various types mixed together

assorted/ different / various / diverse

different 强调此事物与彼事物完全不同

Eg: The word glare is different from that word slare.

various = all kinds of 强调种类数目不同

Eg: We have got various books.

in every part / all parts / various parts of the world

diverse 强调性质不同

We have got diverse opinion.

assorted: various types mixed together. 各种各样的

assorted chocolates

He bought a bag of assorted fruits.

junk n. 破料货,废品

表示"垃圾"的词汇: rubbish / garbage / trash / junk

litter v. 杂乱地布满

dedicated adj. 专心致志的

bargain hunter 到处找便宜货买的人

dealer v. 商人

businessman / trader / merchant / tradesman

dealer "商人"侧重于零售,相当于 tradesman.

peddler 小贩

cherish v. 期望,渴望

entertain or keep hope, love etc. in mind deeply

Eg: She cherishes the hope that her son will return.

Don't cherish such illusion

don't cherish such illusion that 别抱有......的幻想

Eg: Don't cherish the illusion that your father will always pay your debts.

amply adv. 足够地

ample/enough / sufficient / adequate

enough: 数量,程度足够 (可放在名词前或后 )

ample: 充足而有余的

sufficent 比 enough 正式,且只能放在名词前面

The bread is just enough for one meal.

He is old enough to go to the party.

We have sufficient food to last one week.

We have enough food / food enough to last one week.

sufficiently 只放在被修饰词前

old enough / sufficiently old

adequate 数量和质量上的满足

The performance is adequate.

Don?t be worried. They have gotten ample time.

ample / adequate / sufficient / enough

Whatever you do, you must put your heart into it. And then, someday you will be rewarded amply.

masterpiece n. 杰作

prise v. 撬开

carve v. 镌刻

dagger n. 短剑,匕首

miniature adj. 小巧的,小型的

Composition n. 构图

Key sentence:
Antique shops exert a peculiar fascination on a great many people.
exert a peculiar fascination on sb 对某人有一种特殊的魅力
Antique ships appeak to a great many people.
Shoe shops exert a peculiar fascination on a great many ladies.
The more expensive kind of antique shop is usually a forbidding place.
rare objects 珍品
rarity
keep sb. or sth. free from
You can?t keep yourselves free from anxieties like tramps.
We put our books in bookcase to keep them free from dust.
Key sentence:
The forbidding antique shop is pretentious.
The more expensive kind of clothing shop is usually a forbidding place. But no one has to muster up courage to enter a less pretentious clothing shop.
There is always hope that 人们还常常希望
We cherish the hope that
Pieces of paper litter the floor. / The floor is littered with pieces of paper.

paragraph 1

Key structure

keep sb. or sth. free from muster up courage a less pretentious shop ...... 人们还常常希望 There is always hope that by chance / by accident dedicated / concentrated Eg: He is a truly dedicated scholar. He is a truly dedicated English learner. above all: most important of all To do this: in order to discover a rarity be bent on/ bent upon doing sth/ be determined on doing sth/ be devoted to sth. /be engageed in doing 潜心于,专心于 ..... Eg: He is bent on winning the game. He is bent on becoming a bridge player. There is always hope that ... cherish the hope that... You must cherish the hope that one day you will be amply reward.

Paragraph 2 Key structure

```
by chance
a truly dedicated person
above all
the ability to do something
as knowledgeable as
bent on doing
cherish the hope that...
for 花费
a mere : only
He found a lot of interesting things.
be about to do sth.
be about t o when ...... 正要 .....的时候 ......(发生某事)
Eg: I was about to leave when the telehone rang.
    He was about to lock door when his friend visited him.
bother: trouble
Don?t bother / trouble to come here tomorrow.
I would not like to be bothered / troubled by you every day.
disturb
The news has distured me very much
It is disturbing to think that a wild animal is still at large in the quiet countryside.
disturbing / disturbed
```

之间

trouble 在含义上介于 disturb / bother

除…… 之外,还有 apart from in addtion to except Eg: Apart from a slight headache, I feel all right now. Key sentence: the box was full of crockery, and much of it was broken. Dish is done, he begged his wife not to sweep the floor. She ran into the room, her face covered with tears. He lay in bed, his face exposed. 在底部 at the bottom of at the top of 在顶部 remind sb. of 掩饰激动心情 conceal one?s excitement make a real discovery 几十万 hundreds of thousands of Key structure for a mere £ 50 im my neighbourhood he found a great deal to interest him

was about to do when

The dealer told him that it had just come in, but that he could not be bothered to open it.

prised it open

Apart from

much of it broken

at the bottom of

reminded sb. of sth.

for he knew that he had made a real discovery

was worth hundreds of thousands of pounds

Lesson 35 Justice was done

伸张正义

一、【 Text 】课文

The word justice is usually associated with courts of law. We might say that justice has been done when a man's innocence or guilt has been proved beyond doubt.

Justice is part of the complex machinery of the law. Those who seek it, undertake an arduous journey and can never be sure that they will find it. Judges, however wise or eminent, are human and can make mistakes.

There are rare instances when justice almost ceases to be an abstract conception. Reward or punishment are meted out quite independent of human interference. At such times, justice acts like a living force. When we use a phrase like it serves him right, we are, in part, admitting that a certain set of circumstances has enabled justice to act of its own accord.

When a thief was caught on the premises of a large fur store one morning, the shop assistants must have found it impossible to resist the temptation to say 'it serves him right'. The shop was an old converted house with many large, disused fireplaces and tall, narrow chimneys. Towards midday, a girl heard a muffled cry coming from behind one of the walls. As the cry was repeated several times, she ran to tell the manager who promptly rang up the fire brigade. The cry had certainly come from one of the chimneys, but as there were so many of them, the fire fighters could not be certain which one it was. They located the right chimney by tapping at the walls and listening for the man's cries. After chipping through a wall which was eighteen inches thick, they found that a man had been trapped in the chimney. As it was extremely narrow, the man was unable to move, but the firemen were eventually

able to free him by cutting a huge hole in the wall. The sorry-looking, blackened figure that emerged, at once admitted that he had tried to break into the shop during the night but had got stuck in the chimney. He had been there for nearly ten hours. Justice had been done even before the man was handed over to the police.

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

justice n. 正义,公正;司法

coust n. 法院

law n. 法律

innocence n. 无辜

undertake v. 承担,着手做

arduous adj. 艰苦的,艰难的

abstract adj. 抽象的

concept n. 概念,观念

mete out 给予,处置

interference n. 干涉

accord n. 一致

pemises n. 房屋

convert v. 转变,改变

disused adj. 不再用的,废弃的

fireplace n. 壁炉

muffle v. 捂住, 厌抑

chip v. 砍,削,凿

bkacken v. 不变黑

emerge v. (从某处)出现

justice n. 正义,公正;司法

Justice is done 正义得到伸张

bring justice to the criminal 把罪犯缉拿归案

do justice to sb 公正地对待某人

give oneself up to justice 自首

in justice to sth/ sb. 为了对 .....公正起见

Eg: They decided to investigate the case in justice to person. 为了对这件案件公正起见,

他们决定调查这个案件

injustice 不公平,不公正

coust n. 法院

law n. 法律

take law into one's own hand 无法无天

take the law of sb 控告

at law 在诉讼中

within the law 合法

outside the law 不合法

lawyer 律师

lawful 有法可依的

laefully adv.

lawless 无法可依的

```
lawlessly adv.
                无辜
  innocence n.
inocent adj.
              无辜的
                承担,着手做
  undertake v.
take up
                   承担,开始做
undertake to do
开始做 .....
start to do sth/ take off doing sth / be engaged in sth / set out to do / set about doing
/ perform sth.
                 在进行中
... on the way
The discuss on the way.
                艰苦的,艰难的
  arduous adj.
Study English is an arduous job.
-ous adj.
industrious,
laborious,
strenuous
  abstract adj. 抽象的
  concept n. 概念,观念
```

mete out 给予,处置

interference n. 干涉

accord n. 一致

==agree with

in accord with 和 .....一致

out of accord with 和 .....不一致

of one's own accord 自然而然的

Justice is down of it?s own accord.

according to: 依据,根据

in accordance with 依据 (法律,规章,制度),比较正式

premises n. 房屋

residence 住处,居留地(正式用法)

dwelling 供人居住的地方

house 住房

housing 房(总称)

The housing problem

convert v. 转变,改变

disused adj. 不再用的,废弃的

misused 弄错了的

used 用过了的

second hand 二手的

fireplace n. 壁炉

muffle v. 捂住, 厌抑

chip v. 砍,削,凿

chop 砍

blacken v. 不变黑

emerge v. (从某处)出现

## 三、【课文精析】

be associated with == be connected with, be related to

与 ...... 相联系

we might say that: 我们也许会说

beyond prep. 超出某种范围,限度(与名词搭配)

beyond believe 难以相信

beyond words 难以形容

beyond description 难以描述

beyond question 难以置疑

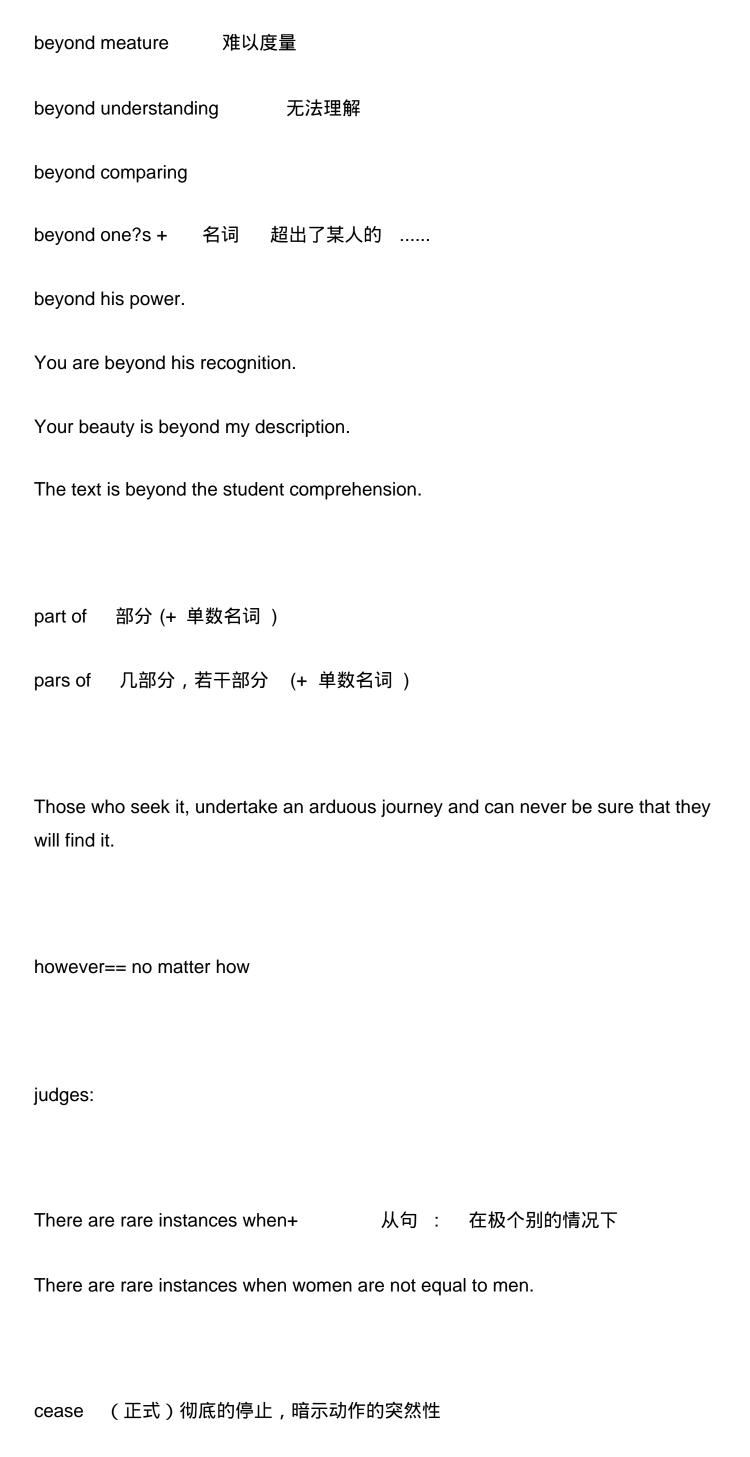
beyond hope 没有希望

beyond recovery 康复无望

beyond dispute 无可争议

beyond contention 无可争辨

beyond imagination 难以想像



His heart suddenly cease to beat.

stop:( 广泛,不正式 )不强调方式,只强调结果

quite independent of human interference ----形容词短语做定语,说明主句的状况 罪有应得 He deserves it / It serves him right At such times: 在有的时候 we are, in part, admitting that enabled sb. to do of its own accord Key sentence: When a thief was caught on the premises of a large fur store one morning, the shop assistants must have found it impossible to resist the temptation to say 'it serves him right'. (双否) found it impossible to resist the temptation to say ... I found it impossible to resist the temptation to buy the beauty dress.

come from behind 从后面

promptly = immediately

located the right chimney

by tapping at the walls and listening for the man?s cries

Eg: We are listening for the clock to announce the New Year.

get stuck 被卡住了

Lesson 36 A chance in a million

百万分之一的机遇

## 一、【 Text 】课文

We are less credulous than we used to be. In the nineteenth century, a novelist would bring his story to a conclusion by presenting his readers with a series of coincidences ---- most of them wildly improbable. Readers happily accepted the fact that an obscure maidservant was really the hero's mother. A long-lost brother, who was presumed dead, was really alive all the time and wickedly plotting to bring about the hero's downfall. And so on. Modern readers would find such naive solutions totally unacceptable. Yet, in real life, circumstances do sometimes conspire to bring about coincidences which anyone but a nineteenth century novelist would find incredible.

When I was a boy, my grandfather told me how a German taxi driver, Franz Bussman, found a brother who was thought to have been killed twenty years before. While on a walking tour with his wife, he stopped to talk to a workman. After they had gone on, Mrs Bussman commented on the workman's close resemblance to her husband and even suggested that he might be his brother. Franz poured scorn on the idea, pointing out that his brother had been killed in action during the war. Though Mrs Bussman was fully acquainted with this story, she thought that there was a chance in a million that she might be right. A few days later, she sent a boy to the workman to ask him if his name was Hans Bussman, Needless to say, the man's name was Hans Bussman and he really was Franz's long-lost brother. When the brothers were reunited, Hans explained how it was that he was still alive. After having been wounded towards the end of the war, he had been sent to hospital and was separated from his unit. The hospital had been bombed and Hans had made his way back into Western Germany on foot. Meanwhile, his unit was lost and all records of him had been destroyed. Hans returned to his family home, but the house had been bombed and no one in the neighbourhood knew what had become of the inhabitants. Assuming that his family had been killed during an air raid, Hans settled down in a village fifty miles away where he had remained ever since.

credulous adj. 轻信的

improbable adj. 不大可能的

obscure adj. 不起眼的

maidservant n. 女仆,女佣

presume v. 假定

wickedly adv. 心眼坏地,居心叵测地

plot v. 密谋

downfall n. 倒台,垮台

na?ve adj. 天真的

unacceptable adj. 不能接受的

conspire v. (事件)巧合促成

incredible adj. 难以置信的

resemblance n. 相似

scorn n. 嘲弄,挖苦

acquaint v. 使了解

reunite v. 使团聚

assume v. 假定,认为

credulous adj. 轻信的 (修饰人)

credible: 可信的,可靠的 (修饰事物)

Eg: The story he told us is credible.

incredulous

incredible believable Eg; He demanded for believable explanation unbelievable improbable adj. 不大可能的 obscure adj. 不起眼的 Eg: The bus stopped at an obscure little town 令人费解的 An obscure figure can be seen through the fog. 多用于比喻意,指不明确说明而造成的模糊不清 vague 女仆,女佣 maidservant n. 假定 presume v. vt. presume that 假定 (根据过去的经验和感觉作出决断 presume:

assume: 武断的,把尚未证实的作为依据,与事实不相符合

Eg: Let us assume that your words are fact

suppose: 最普通的用词,猜想、陈述自己的看法

Eg: I suppose that it was my fault.

wickedly adv. 心眼坏地,居心叵测地

plot v. 密谋

The criminals were plotting to rob the bank.

conspire: 众多人合谋做重大的犯法勾当,犹指反叛,不用于修饰单个人

scheme: 某人暗中设计狡诈的手段来谋求自己的私利

The man is scheme for power.

downfall n. 倒台,垮台

na?ve adj. 天真的

unacceptable adj. 不能接受的

conspire v. (事件)巧合促成

vi.

The weather and car trouble conspire to spoil our vacation.

incredible adj. 难以置信的

resemblance n. 相似

likeness: 最普通的用语,比 resemblance 意味要强

bear a strong resemblance to sb. or sth.

The girl bears a strong resemblance to her sister.

such a resemblance

resemble 特别是指外观或外在性质的相似

similarity: 性质、特色、程度的相似

The two envents which happened at the same time have got similarity

similar to sth. or sb.

They have got close likeness.

scorn n. 嘲弄,挖苦

pour scorn on

pour contempt on

pour ridicule on 对 ..... 嘲弄,挖苦,斥之以鼻

pour heap

Eg: He poured scorn on his wife?s suggestion.

look down upon / think scorn of 藐视

contempt: 蔑视,强烈谴责某人或某事低贱、卑鄙,语气强于 scorn

despite: 语气较弱,表示嘲弄

Eg: His suggestion was dismissed with scorn.

His face showed the scorn he felt.

acquaint v. 使了解

be acquainted with sth. 对 ......有所了解

acquaint sb. with sth. / acquaint sb. of sth. 告之某人某事

make a person acquainted with sb. 介绍某人同另一个人认识

Let me make ... acquainted with you ( 正式用法 )

acquaintance n. 熟人

reunite v. 使团聚

assume v. 假定,认为

## 三、【课文精析】

It is a chance in a million to meet you here.

He let out a scream that must can be heard in Peru.

We are less credulous than we used to be.

We are not so honest as we used to be.

谓语动词是 be 动词的时候用 used to be, 而不用 used to

谓语动词是实义动词的时候用 used to

He works less hard than he used to.

bring sth to a conclusion 结束 == bring sth to a close( 更正式)

Eg: They decided to bring the meeting to a conclusion.

It was ... who brought meeting to a close.

who was presumed dead, was really alive all the time and wickedly plotting to bring about the hero's downfall.

bring about 产生,影响

Modern science has brought about great changes in life.

find such naive solutions totally unacceptable

find sth. interesting 觉得某事有趣

find sth. beautiful 觉得某物漂亮

Key sentence:

Mrs Bussman commented on the workman's close resemblance to her husband and even suggested that he might be his brother.

comment on sth 就 ......作出评论,评价 -- remark on

Hans explained how it was that he was still alive.

Eg: I can?t explain how it is that he is still here.

make one?s way

become of ==happen to 发生遭遇,不幸的事件,多用于疑问句,主语必须是 whatever

Eg: Whatever became of that girl?

Please explain what became of you yesterday.

用 assuming, 而不用 presuming; 主观上的臆断、无事实根据的。

Lesson 37 The Westhaven Express

开往威斯特海温的快车

一、【 Text 】课文

We have learnt to expect that trains will be punctual. After years of conditioning, most of us have developed an unshakable faith in railway timetables. Ships may be delayed by storms; air flights may be cancelled because of bad weather; but trains must be on time. Only an exceptionally heavy snow fall might temporarily dislocate railway services. It is all too easy to blame the railway authorities when something does go wrong. The truth is that when mistakes occur, they are more likely to be ours than theirs.

After consulting my railway timetable, I noted with satisfaction that there was an express train to Westhaven. It went direct from my local station and the journey lasted a mere hour and seventeen minutes. When I boarded the train, I could not help noticing that a great many local people got on as well. At the time, this did not strike me as odd. I reflected that there must be a great many people besides myself who wished to take advantage of this excellent service. Neither was I surprised when the train stopped at Widley, a tiny station a few miles along the line. Even a mighty express train can be held up by signals. But when the train dawdled at station after station, I began to wonder. It suddenly dawned on me that this express was not roaring down the line at ninety miles an hour, but barely chugging along at thirty. One hour and seventeen minutes passed and we had not even covered half the distance. I asked a passenger if this was the Westhaven Express, but he had not even heard of it. I determined to lodge a complaint as soon as we arrived. Two hours later, I was talking angrily to the station master at Westhaven. When he denied the train's existence, I borrowed his copy of the timetable. There was a note of triumph in my voice when I told him that it was there in black and white. Glancing at it briefly, he told me to look again. A tiny asterisk conducted me to a footnote at the bottom of the page. It said: 'This service has been suspended.'

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

express n. 快车; adj. 高速的

punctual adj. 准时的;

condition v. 使习惯于

unshakable adj. 不可动摇的

faith n. 信任

cancel v. 取消

exceptionally adv. 例外地

dislocate v. 打乱 (计划等)

blame v. 责怪

consult v. 请教,查阅

direct adv. 径直地

odd adj. 奇怪的,异常的

reflect v. 细想

advantage n. 优势

mighty adj. 强大的,有力的

dawdle v. 慢吞吞的动或做

chug v. 咔嚓咔嚓地响

lodge v. 提出

comlaint n. 抱怨

triumph n. 胜利

asterisk n. 星号(\*)

conduct v. 引向,引导

express n. 快车; adj. 高速的

express way: 高速公路

express train 快车

special express 特快

through express 直快

stopping/ local train 慢车

punctual adj. 准时的;

be punctual in doing sth. 在做 .....方面非常准时

be punctual to the minute 非常准时

Eg: He is a man who?s punctual to the minute.
punctually adv.
unpunctual ant.
punctuality n.
condition v. 使习惯于
==form a habit in
Eg: This society has conditioned each of us.
be conditioned to 习惯了
Eg: Each of us has been conditioned to the society.
The plants has been conditioned to the cold weather here.
The cold weather has conditioned the plants here.
condition 条件
on condition that 在条件下如果
on no condition 在任何情况下,用在句首句子要倒装
On no condition must you be late.
in good/ bad condition 情况良好/情况糟糕
change one's condition 结婚
in the interesting condition: 怀孕 pregnant
unshakable adj. 不可动摇的
faith n. 信任
keep faith with sb. 对守信用

put one's faith in sth 对 .....有信心

on the faith of 在 .....的保障下 , 凭 .....的信用

faith 深信不疑,信仰,比 belief 程度重一点

belief: 可信赖,可接受

conviction 坚定的信念

trust 相信,依赖

credit 对 .....完全相信

cancel v. 取消

call off == cancel 可以互相替换

abolish 废除

rescind 撤销,废止

write off 注销,勾销

cross out 划掉

exceptionally adv. 例外地

dislocate v. 打乱 (计划等)

blame v. 责怪

consult v. 请教,查阅

direct adv. 径直地

odd adj. 奇怪的,异常的

reflect v. 细想

reflect on sth 细想 ......

advantage n. 优势

take advantage of sb/sth 欺骗 .....并利用

of great/no advantage to sb/sth 对 ......有(没有)好处

to advantage 更有效地

have advantage over sb 胜过某人,比某人有优势

interest 个人的利益,好处

benefit 通过正当手段谋求的好处

profit 金钱上的获益

good 个人或集体的利益

mighty adj. 强大的,有力的

dawdle v. 慢吞吞的动或做

chug v. 咔嚓咔嚓地响

lodge v. 提出

make/ lodge complaint 提出抱怨

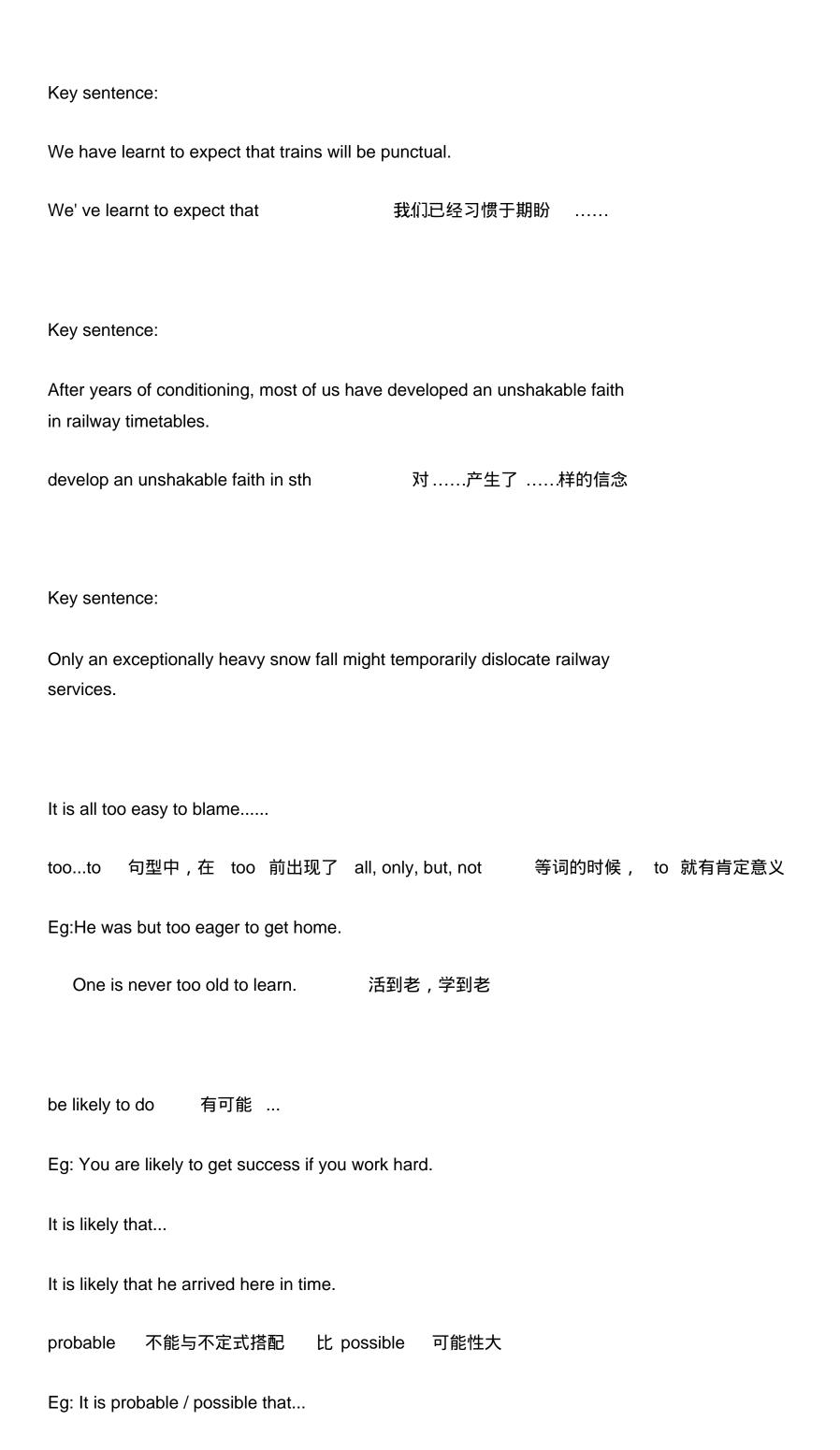
comlaint n. 抱怨

triumph n. 胜利

asterisk n. 星号(\*)

conduct v. 引向,引导

三、【课文精析】



Eg: It is probable / possible that he will speak to you. It is possible for us to finish the work in an hour. 给某人以 ......印象,使某人感到 ;as 后面可以接分词、名词、形容词搭配连用。 strike sb as Eg: The activity atroke me as wasting time. hold up==hold back, hinder, prevent 渐渐被某人明白 dawn on sb barely==only in black and white 白纸黑字 Key structure We' ve learnt to expect that 我们已经习惯于期盼 We' ve learnt to expect that 我们已经习惯于期盼 It is all too easy to blame..... 句型中,在 too 前出现了 all, only, but, not 等词的时候 , to 就有肯定意义 too...to 有可能 ... be likely to do It is likely that... The first paragraph is important go direct from ... to ...

给某人以 ......印象, 使某人感到 ;as 后面可以接分词、名词、形容词搭配连用。

strike sb as

hold up==hold back, hinder, prevent

dawn on sb 渐渐被某人明白

in black and white 白纸黑字

Lesson 38 The first calender 最早的日历

一、【 Text 】课文

Future historians will be in a unique position when they come to record the history of our own times. They will hardly know which facts to select from the great mass of evidence that steadily accumulates. What is more they will not have to rely solely on the written word. Films, videos. CDs and CD-ROMs are just some of the bewildering amount of information they will have. They will be able, as it were, to see and hear us in action. But the historian attempting to reconstruct the distant past is always faced with a difficult task. He has to deduce what he can from the few scanty clues available. Even seemingly insignificant remains can shed interesting light on the history of early man.

Up to now, historians have assumed that calendars came into being with the advent of agriculture, for then man was faced with a real need to understand something about the seasons. Recent scientific evidence seems to indicate that this assumption is incorrect.

Historians have long been puzzled by dots, lines and symbols which have been engraved on walls, bones, and the ivory tusk of mammoths. The nomads who made these markings lived by hunting and fishing during the last Ice Age, which began about 35,000 B.C. and ended about 10,000 B.C. By correlating markings made in various parts of the world, historians have been able to read this difficult code. They have found that it is connected with the passage of days and the phases of the moon. It is, in fact, a primitive type of calendar. It has long been known that the hunting scenes depicted on walls were not simply a form of artistic expression. They had a definite meaning, for they were as near as early man could get to writing. It is possible that there is a definite relation between these paintings and the markings that sometimes accompany them. It seems that man was making a real effort to understand the seasons 20,000 years earlier than has been supposed.

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

calendar n. 历法,日历

historian n. 历史学家

unique adj. 无与伦比的

steadily adv. 不断地

solely adv. 唯一地

video n. 录像

CDROM n. (只读)光盘驱动器

bewilder v. 令人眼花缭乱

deduce v. 推断,推理

scanty adj. 不足的,贫乏的

clue n. 线索

insignificant adj. 不重要的

shed v. 使流出,泻

advent n. 出现,到来,来临

agriculture n. 农业

assumpt ion n. 假定,设想

dot n. 小圆点

symbol n. 符号

engrave v. 雕刻

ivory n. 象牙制品

mammoth n. (古)长毛象

phase n. 月相,天相

tusk n. 獠牙,长牙、象牙

primitive adj. 原始的

nomad n. 游牧民

depict v. 描画,描绘

correlate v. 使相互联系

calendar n. 历法,日历

calender 轮压机

historian n. 历史学家

historic 具有历史意义的

This is a historic speech.

historical 与历史研究有关系的

historical research 历史研究

unique adj. 无与伦比的

unique: uneaqualed

Speech is a unique human ability

unique 不能接受比较级,可以接受 quite, almost, nearly, surely, really 等修饰,但不能接受 rather,very 等词的修饰。

unique 独一无二的,因唯一而独特

speical 注重性质的特殊

especial 强调超过其他的全部

Eg: This is a matter of especial importance.

This is a especially important matter.

particular 特定的,着重同类中某一个所有独特的性质

Pineapples have particular flavour. 菠萝有特别的味道。

exceptional

extraordinary 特别的,与众不同的

Eg: The warm weather is exceptional for Jamuary.

steadily adv. 不断地

solely adv. 唯一地

video n. 录像

CD-ROM n. (只读)光盘驱动器

bewilder v. 令人眼花缭乱

bewilder: confuse

Eg: she was bewildered by so many beautiful dresses.

puzzle 某问题因复杂而令人费解

Eg: I am puzzled by the problem.

perplex 难以理解(包含焦虑不安,不知如何解决的意思)

Eg: He is perplexed for the answer.

bewilderment: n.

in bewilderment 茫然不知所措

deduce v. 推断,推理

deduce: determine or decide sth. by given facts.

Eg: I deduce the conclusion from the given facts.

deduce ... from 从...中推论,推断

infer 推断(不表示过程)

Eg: What can you infer from the text?

deduce ==> (ant.) indece 归纳

scanty adj. 不足的,贫乏的

scanty: too few, not enough

scanty knowledge 一知半解

a scanty crop 欠收

be scanty of sth 奇缺

be short of 短缺

Eg: The village school is scanty of textbooks. 这乡村学校奇缺教材。

be want of = in need of 需要 ......

clue n. 线索

insignificant adj. 不重要的

shed v. 使流出,泻

shed: pour out

shed tears 泪流满面

shed light 发光

shed light on sb. 启发,启迪

shed one?s blood for country 为祖国而流血。

shed one's clothes 脱去衣服

advent n. 出现,到来,来临

advent: coming or arrival

at the advent of winter 在冬天到来的时候

at the advent of 在...到来的时候

since the advent of 自从 ...的到来

agriculture n. 农业

assumption n. 假定,设想

dot n. 小圆点

symbol n. 符号

engrave v. 雕刻

ivory n. 象牙制品

mammoth n. (古)长毛象

phase n. 月相,天相

tusk n. 獠牙,长牙、象牙

primitive adj. 原始的

nomad n. 游牧民

depict v. 描画,描绘

correlate v. 使相互联系

## 三、【课文精析】

in the unique position 处于无以伦比,独一无二的情况

come to: start, begin

Key sentence:

They will hardly know which facts to select from the great mass of evidence that steadily accumulates.

select from 从 ......中进行选择 (同类中)

choose 挑选 ( 凭个人意愿 )

- 一、有三种情况 choose 和 select 不能互换:
- 1. 当在两者中选一个时只能用 choose, 即 choose between

Eg: We have to choose between leaving early and paying for taxi.

2. choose 可带 wh 从句

Eg: I'll let you choose where we should go to eat.

3. choose to do 只能用 choose.

Eg: What invariably happens is that a great number of things choose to go wrong at precisely the same moment. (L33)

He has deliberately chosen to lead the life he leads and is fully aware of the consequences. (L27)

二、 select 比 choose 更正式 , 即在许多同类的人或物当中根据客观标准对这两个加以比较 , 鉴别 , 认真地挑选出最好的、最喜欢的、最有用的。

great mass of == too much = = agreat amount of

evidence 不可数名词;不能手 a great many, a large number of

Eg: She selected a blue dress from the wardrobe.

You have been selected to present us on the committee.

what is more 更有甚者 , furthremore,moreover 更是的意思

what is worse 更糟糕的是

Eg: You can?t rely on others. He can?t be relied on. solely adv. 唯一地 means: only, just, nearly bewilder 令人眼花缭乱 bewildering 令人眼花缭乱的 感到眼花缭乱的 bewildered They will be able, as it were, to see and hear us in action. 行动中的,活动中的 in action 可以说,似乎,好像 as it were Eg: He is as it were a walking dictionary. 他可以说是一部活字典 Computers can never as it were lead independent lives. 电脑不能过独立的生活 事实上 as it is=in fact=in really=actually=as a matter of fact Eg: I thought things would get better, but as it is, they are getting worse. In many ways children lives as it were in a different world from the adults. 在许多 方面,孩子们可以说过着一种与大人完全不同的生活。

依靠,指望

rely on ==count on ==depend on

Key sentence:

with a difficult task.

But the historian attempting to reconstruct the distant past is always faced

be faced with: be in the position in which one must deal with a problem or unpleasant situation.

面临(因境,问题)

Eg: Automobile industry is faced with a bad future now.

汽车工业正面临着令人担忧的

未来。

A great many people are faced with losing their jobs.

许多人面临着失业。

In my opinion, you are faced with a problem as it were how to get enough time to study English.

The student attempting to learn English well in a year is faced with a difficult task. 企图在一年之内把英语学好的学生面临着巨大的难题。

available adj. 可利用的

Eg: I have dictionary availabe for you.

Is there a place available for us to have a chat.

I know you are in need of help, but excuse me, I don?t have any s for you.

tudents available

remains ==ruins 遗迹,遗物

insignificant==unimportant

shed light on=throw light on = cast light on

understood 解释,说明,提示

意思是: make a matter clear or

Eg: This information shed light on the problem. 这份情报会搞清楚这一问题。

Can you shed any light on the case of the fire? 你能够解释这次火灾吗?

She will shed light on the case of stolen jewels. 好将能够揭示这次珠宝失窃案。

up to now = so far 到目前为止

come into being == come into existence

上台

产生,出现

come to power

come into use 开始使用

be faced with a real need to do sth.

面临着做某事的真正需要。

Eg: We are faced with a real need to learn English well.

indicate 揭示

correlate 相互联系

it is connected with == it is associated with

in fact 可以替换为 as it is; actually, in reality

as near as 接近

Lesson 39 Nothing to worry about

不必担心

一、【 Text 】课文

The rough road across the plain soon became so bad that we tried to get Bruce to drive back to the village we had come from. Even though the road was littered with boulders and pitted with holes, Bruce was not in the least perturbed. Glancing at his map, he informed us that the next village was a mere twenty miles away. It was not that Bruce always underestimated difficulties. He simply had no sense of danger at

all. No matter what the conditions were, he believed that a car should be driven as fast as it could possibly go.

As we bumped over the dusty track, we swerved to avoid large boulders. The wheels scooped up stones which hammered ominously under the car. We felt sure that sooner or later a stone would rip a hole in our petrol tank or damage the engine. Because of this, we kept looking back, wondering if we were leaving a trail of oil and petrol behind us.

What a relief it was when the boulders suddenly disappeared, giving way to a stretch of plain where the only obstacles were clumps of bushes. But there was worse to come. Just ahead of us there was a huge fissure. In response to renewed pleadings, Bruce stopped. Though we all got out to examine the fissure, he remained in the car. We informed him that the fissure extended for fifty yards and was two feet wide and four feet deep. Even this had no effect. Bruce went into a low gear and drove at a terrifying speed, keeping the front wheels astride the crack as he followed its zig-zag course. Before we had time to worry about what might happen, we were back on the plain again. Bruce consulted the map once more and told us that the village was now only fifteen miles away. Our next obstacle was a shallow pool of water about half a mile across. Bruce charged at it, but in the middle, the car came to a grinding halt. A yellow light on the dash- board flashed angrily and Bruce cheerfully announced that there was no oil in the engine!

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

rough adj. 崎岖不平的

boulder n. 大石块

pit v. 使得坑坑洼洼

perturb v. 使不安

underestimate v. 低估

swerve v. 争转变

scoop v. 挖出

hammer v. (用锤)击打,锤打

ominously adv. 有预兆的,不祥的

rip v. 划破,撕,扯

petrol n. 汽油

stretch n. 一大片(平地或水)

obstacle n. 障碍

clump n. 丛,簇

fissure n. (石、地的)深缝

renew v. 重复

pleading n. 恳求

gear n. (汽车)排档

crack n. 缝隙

zigzag n. 之 "字形

shallow adj. 浅的

grind (ground, ground) v. 磨擦

halt n. 停

dashboard n. (汽车上的)仪表盘

rough adj. 崎岖不平的

Eg: We?d better not take the rough road.

be rough on sb. 对某人苛刻,无礼

Don?t be rough on your friends.

cut up rough 发脾气

boulder n. 大石块

使得坑坑洼洼 pit v. 使不安 perturb v. verp upset be perturbed about sth 为...而心神不安 His threats didn?t perturb her in the least 并非用心去扰乱 disturb Eg:It is disturbing to think that a wild animal is still at large in the quiet countryside. plague 因病痛和类似的折磨而使人苦恼 Eg:The terrible disease plagued him trouble Eg:Sorry to give you trouble. / Sorry to trouble you. worry Eg:He is worried about his son?s safety. fret Eg:He freted himself all the time for news of her. upset Eg:I feel upset now because I am afraid I hurt you. 使沮丧 dismay 辨别: perturb; disturb; plague; trouble; worry; fret; upset; dismay 低估 underestimate v.

争转变

挖出

swerve v.

scoop v.

Eg:She sccped out some sugar.

make a scoop 走运

Eg:That guy made a scoop.

hammer v. (用锤)击打,锤打

ominously adv. 有预兆的,不祥的

ominous adj.

Eg:Look at those ominous black clouds.

omen n.

Eg:This is a good / bad omen.

Eg:The clouds omen rain.

rip v. 划破,撕,扯

tear

rip one's mask away 撕下某人的假面具

let things tip==let things be 听其自然

rip into 猛攻,抨击

rip off 偷窃

rip up the back 背后说坏话

petrol n. 汽油

stretch n. 一大片(平地或水)

at a stretch 连续的,一口气的,不停顿的

a stretch of land

a stretch of water Eg: He worked for hours at a stretch. We drove fast on a stretch of open field. He is unable to work for long stretches. a stretch of hill 连绵不断的群山 vt. He stretched out his hand to get the apple. There are forests stretching for hundreds of miles. Transport was rather stretched in the Spring Festival. 障碍 obstacle n. Lack of education is an obstacle to success. 构成 ...的障碍 constitue an obstacle to remove/ overcome an obstacle 克服困难 put obstacle in sb's way 妨碍某人的发展 obstacle to 介词 to 要英语中有好多动词要与介词 to 搭配: key; answer; shred; advantage; disadvantage; admission; damage to 辨别: obstacle; obstruction; hindrance Eg: Lake of education is obstacle to success.

There must be an obstruction in the pipe.

You are more of hindrance than help.

丛,簇 clump n. (石、地的)深缝 fissure n. 重复 renew v. 恳求 pleading n. (汽车)排档 gear n. astride prep. 骑,跨 缝隙 crack n. "之"字形 zi gzag n. shallow adj. 浅的 磨擦 grind (ground, ground )v. grind wheat into flour 把 .....弄成碎片 grind sth to pieces grind one's teeth in anger 气得咬牙切齿 halt n. 停 ==stop They halt for a few minutes. stop; halt; cease Eg: The heart will cease to beat when life ceases. pause vi. He paused for a breath.

halt

They halted for a few minutes.

halt; cease; pause; stop	
halt n.	
come to a halt / stop    停下来	
dashboard n.   (汽车上的)仪表盘	
三、【课文精析】	
get sb. to do sth.: persuade / advise sb. to do	
Please get them to finish the work as quickly as possible.	
Please get him to give up smoking.	
be littered with	
be pitted with	
even though: even if	
not in the least= not at all / not a bit/ not the least bit     一点也不	
not a little = very much	
by no means= in no way =on no account =at no times= under no circumstances	绝

a mere==only

(必须和不定冠词搭配)

It was not (to say) 这并不是说 dusty track==dusty road 回头看 look back 从句做伴随状况状语 wondering How relieved we were 为 ......所代替 give way to Eg: The great clouds gradually broke up and give way to blue sky. He has no intention of iving way to your demands. in response to: in reaction to Key sentence: Before we had time to worry about what might happen, we were back on the plain again. hardly ... when... He had hardly had time to settle down when he sold the house. Before he had hardly had time to worry about what might happen when we were back on the plane again. 真假难辨 Lesson 40 Who?s who

一、【 Text 】课文

It has never been explained why university students seem to enjoy practical jokes more than anyone else. Students specialize in a particular type of practical joke: the hoax. Inviting the fire brigade to put out a nonexistent fire is a crude form of deception which no self-respecting student would ever indulge in. Students often create amusing situations which are funny to everyone except the victims.

When a student recently saw two workmen using a pneumatic drill outside his university, he immediately telephoned the police and informed them that two students dressed up as workmen were tearing up the road with a pneumatic drill. As soon as he had hung up, he went over to the workmen and told them that if a policeman ordered them to go away, they were not to take him seriously. He added that a student had dressed up as a policeman and was playing all sorts of silly jokes on people. Both the police and the workmen were grateful to the student for this piece of advance information.

The student hid in an archway nearby where he could watch and hear everything that went on. Sure enough, a policeman arrived on the scene and politely asked the workmen to go away. When he received a very rude reply from one of the workmen, he threatened to remove them by force. The workmen told him to do as he pleased and the policeman telephoned for help. Shortly afterwards, four more policemen arrived and remonstrated with the workmen. As the men refused to stop working, the police attempted to seize the pneumatic drill. The workmen struggled fiercely and one of them lost his temper. He threatened to call the police. At this, the police pointed out ironically that this would hardly be necessary as the men were already under arrest. Pretending to speak seriously, one of the workmen asked if he might make a telephone call before being taken to the station. Permission was granted and a policeman accompanied him to a pay phone. Only when he saw that the man was actually telephoning the police did he realize that they had all been the victims of a hoax.

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

hoax n. 骗局,戏弄

deceptio n n. 欺骗,骗局

self-respecting adj. 自重的

indulge v. 使沉迷

pneumatic adj. 气动的

drill n. 钻

silly adj. 无意义的,无聊的

advance adj. 预先的,事先获得的

archway n. 拱形门楼

remonstrate v. 规劝,告诫

ironically adv. 讽刺地

permission n. 许可

grant v. 同意,准予

hoax n. 骗局,戏弄

play a hoax on sb. 戏弄某人

play a trick on sb. 戏弄某人

play a joke on sb. 开某人玩笑

Eg: The boy student is thinking how to play a hoax on his classmate.

deception n. 欺骗,骗局

deception 无关紧要的骗局,并不是故意的欺骗

Eg: She referred to the pills as sweet, so the harmless deception made it easy for her child to take them.

deceit (故意的)欺骗

Eg: We are incapable of deceit.

fraud 对公众的欺骗行为,多指官方的欺骗或财政舞弊

trickery 欺骗(语气上严厉) ,着重有步骤地诡计来谋取私利。

Eg: He had gained control of the company by trickery.

self-respecting adj. 自重的

indulge v. 使沉迷

Eg: He indulged himself in smoking and drinking.

=He was indulged in smoking and drinking.

v. 纵容

Eg: She indulges her only son.

pneumatic adj. 气动的

drill n. 钻

silly adj. 无意义的,无聊的

foolish 强调愚蠢的,笨的,不明智的

Eg: I remonstrated him not to do anything foolish.

silly 无意义的 , 无聊的 , 无知的

Eg: Being called silly is not compliment.

Don?t play such a silly hoax.

stupid 人及言行缺乏良好的判断力,天生的迟钝

Eg: His son is as stupid as all.

dull 迟钝的

Eg: the old man?s hearing has become dull.

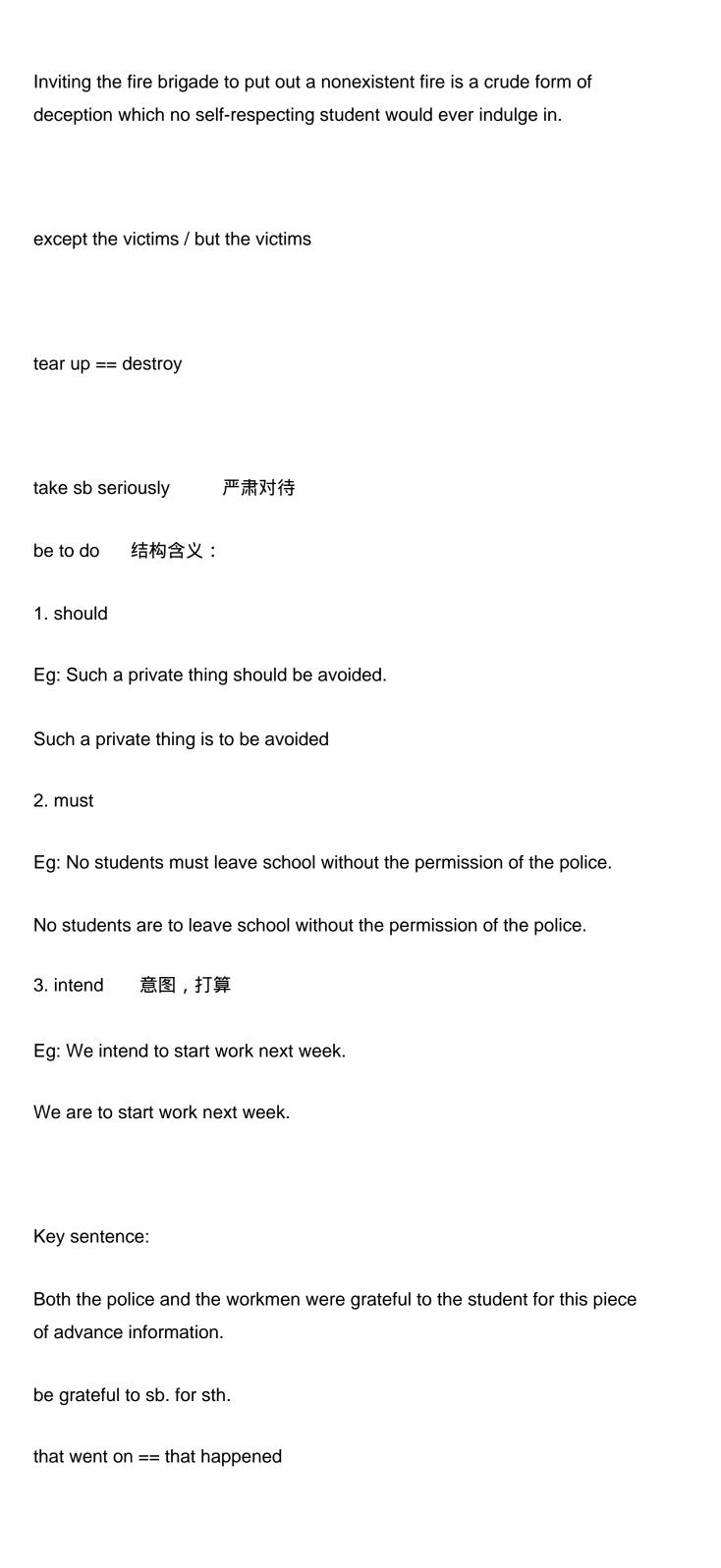
She is a dull girl.

预先的,事先获得的 advance adj. advance information / in advance 拱形门楼 archway n. 规劝,告诫 remonstrate v. 规劝某人做某事 remonstrate sb to do sth ironically adv. 讽刺地 permission n. 许可 同意,准予 grant v. ask sb. for permission 请求许可 give / grant sb. permission 准予许可 三、【课文精析】 Key sentence: It has never been explained why university students seem to enjoy practical jokes more than anyone else. Eg: It has never been explained why he seems to enjoy doing it.

specialize in. 专门研究

Eg: He specialized in biology after graduation.

Key sentence:



Key sentence:
The workmen told him to do as he pleased and the policeman telephoned for help.
as he pleased 随他的意愿做
four more == another four
as this 听到
At the words,he got angry.
With the words, he left the room angrily.
Key sentence:
At this, the police pointed out ironically that this would hardly be necessary as the men were already under arrest.
pointed out ironically 讽刺地指出
hardly be necessary 大可不必
under 与名词搭配表示一种被动的概念
under discussion / arrest / repair
Key sentence:
Pretending to speak seriously, one of the workmen asked if he might make a telephone call before being taken to the station.
make a telephone call 打一个电话

he threatened to remove them by force.

Key sentence:

Permission was granted and a policeman accompanied him to a pay phone.

Lesson 41 Illusions of pastoral peace

宁静田园生活的遐想

一、【 Text 】课文

The quiet life of the country ahs never appealed to me. City born and city bred. I have always regarded the country as something you look at through a train window, or something you occasional visit during the weekend. Most of my friends live in the city, yet they always go into raptures at the mere mention of the country. Though they extol the virtues of the peaceful life, only one of hem has ever gone to live in the country and he was back in town within six months. Even he still lives under the illusion that country life is somehow superior to town life. He is forever talking about the friendly people, the clean atmosphere, the closeness to nature and the gentle pace of living. Nothing can be compared, he maintains, with the first cockcrow, the twittering of birds at dawn, the sight of the rising sun glinting on the trees and pastures. This idyllic pastoral scene is only part of the picture. My friend fails to mention the long and friendless winter evenings in front of the TV -- virtually the only form of entertainment. He says nothing about the poor selection of goods in the shops, or about those unfortunate people who have to travel from the country to the city every day to get to work. Why people are prepared to tolerate a four-hour journey each day for the dubious privilege of living in the country is beyond me. They could be saved so much misery and expense if they chose to live in the city where they rightly belong.

If you can do without the few pastoral pleasures of the country, you will find the city can provide you with the best that life can offer. You never have to travel miles to see your friends. They invariably live nearby and are always available for an informal chat or an evening's entertainment. Some of my acquaintances in the country come up to town once or twice a year to visit the theatre as a special treat. For them this is a major operation which involves considerable planning. As the play draws to its close, they wonder whether they will ever catch that last train home. The cit dweller never experiences anxieties of this sort. The latest exhibitions, films, or plays are only a short bus ride away. Shopping, too, is always a pleasure. The latest exhibitions, films, or plays are only a short bus ride away. Shopping, too, is

always a pleasure. There is so much variety that you never have to make do with second best. Country people run wild when they go shopping in the city and stagger home loaded with as many of the exotic items as they can carry. Nor is the city without its moments of beauty. There is something comforting about the warm glow shed by advertisements on cold wet winter nights. Few things could be more impressive than the peace that descends on deserted city streets at weekends when the thousands that travel to work every day are tucked away in their homes in the country. It has always been a mystery to me who city dwellers, who appreciate all these things, obstinately pretend that they would prefer to live in the country.

二、【 New words and expressions

】 生词和短语

illusion n. 幻想,错觉

pastoral adj. 田园的

breed v. 培育

rapture n. 欣喜

extol v. 赞美,颂扬

superior adj. 优越的

cockcrow n. 鸡叫

twitter v. (鸟)吱吱叫,喊喊喳喳叫

glint v. 闪烁

pasture n. 牧场

idyllic adj. 田园诗的

virtually adv. 几乎;差不多

dubious adj. 可疑的,怀疑的

privilege n. 特权

misery n. 苦难

acquaintance n. 熟人

treat n. 难得的乐事,享受

dweller n. 居住者

stagger v. 摇晃;蹒跚

exotic a dj. 寻乎寻常的,外来的

glow n. 白炽光

descend v. 下落,降临

tuck v. 缩进,隐藏

obstinately adv. 固执地,顽固地

illusion n. 幻想,错觉

under illusion that / under the impression that

I am under the impression that you are honest.

We live under the illusion.

I am under the impression that he will help me every day.

under no illusion that

We live under no illusion that country life is beautiful.

have illusion about / have no illusion about

delusion 幻觉, (精神病人)

Eg: He is under the delusion that somebody will kill him tomorrow.

He lives under the delusion that he will be killed sometime.

vision 憧景

Eg: I live under the vision that I have a bright future.

illusioned adj. 充满幻想的

Eg: The world of children is illusioned.

illusionary adj. 错觉的,幻觉的

Eg: Don?t believe in him. What he said is illusiona ry picture.

illusive adj. 虚假的,不可靠的

Eg: What he described was illusive. Don?t depend on him any more.

imaginary

imaging

Eg: I can?t imagine building Great Wall.

imaginary 虚构的

Eg: The story is imaginary, Don?t be taken in.

imaginary

The story is imaginary . Don?t be taken in.

imaginative 富有想像力的

Children are more imaginative than adults.

unimaginative 缺乏想像力的

imaginable 能想像得出的,(须放在被修饰词之后)

This is the idea / way imaginable.

imaginary / imaginative / imaginable / unimaginatice

We are imaginative

illusionary / imaginary 虚构的

pastoral adj. 田园的

```
培育
  breed v.
vt. breed / bred / bred
breed / raise / bring up / rear
raise /breed pets
raise / breed dogs.
Do you raise dogs?
educate
As a mother, you must breed good manners into your child.
rear 抚养,
I must rear the child because I have the duty.
He rears / breeds / raises two dogs.
grow / plant tree
cause / lead / result in / give rise to
War breeds misery and ruin.
                                    战争导致毁灭和悲惨。
Your carelessness bred the accident
                   近亲结婚,同种繁殖
breed in and in
                       非近亲结婚,异种繁殖
breed out and out
breed / raise / bring up / cause
  rapture n.
               欣喜
great joy / delight
At the news, they are in raptures.
At the news, they are great delighted.
```

in raptures(about/ over sth. )

(对.....)欣喜若狂

I am in raptures about the new book.

go into raptures(over/ about/ at sth.) (对 ...... 感到非常的高兴!

He went into raptures when he heard the good news.

joy / happiness

We have a good time and we are full of happiness.

delight 高兴,喜悦,程度强于 joy, 但不如 rapture ,也不如 rapture 那么正式,

I feel delighted == I am in raptures

ecstasy 入迷;狂喜

He is in ecstasy.

enchant v enchantment 入迷,

He was enchanted in thoughts.

elation 兴高采烈;得意洋洋

He has got the feeling of elation.

bliss 极乐;无尚的幸福

Nothing in the world can make you happier than bliss.

A sound sleep is my bliss

glee 欢乐,高兴,欢心 (诗歌中)

rapture / in raptures / go into raptures / joy / happiness / delight / ecstasy

/ enchantment / elation / bliss / glee

extol v. 赞美,颂扬

vt. praise

I can?t find a good word to praise you / your ability.

I want to extol the virtues of human beings.

compliment v. & n. 恭维

Do you often compliment ...?

exalt 赞扬,歌颂,吹捧

You disgust me. why do you extol such a stupid person.

laud 赞美

I want to do nothing but laud you.

What do you want to laud me?

I want to laud your beauty, ability and your wealth.

extol / praise / compliment / exalt / laud

superior adj. 优越的

better than the average

无比较级和最高级

be superior to 比…优越

In my opinion, town life is superior to country life.

interior

be interior to 比…低,不如 …

Country life is superior to city life

superior / interior

senior

senior high school

```
junior
The word is basic
junior high school
senior /junior
posterior / prior
                   后于/ 先于
This work is prior to that one.
of no confidence / importance / significance
It should be inferior to that one.
superior / inferior / senior / junior / posterior / prior
be prior to
                 鸡叫
  cockcrow n.
  twitter v.
              (鸟)吱吱叫,喊喊喳喳叫
           闪烁
  glint v.
shine / flash / glitter
        表示忽明忽暗的闪光,也可以指反光镜反出来的光线
flash
Eg: A lighthouse is flashing in the distance.
        表示透过某种媒介而透出来的光线,比如透过茫茫大雾的光芒
glim
```

Eg: Through the fog, we saw a lighthouse glimming.

Eg: The sun glinted through the leaves.

glint

glisten

表示迅速闪烁的微弱的光,比如阳光下闪烁的露水光

潮湿的物体上所反射的光泽,或是柔弱的光辉

Eg: The white snow glistened in all the colors of rainbow.

flicker 表示蜡烛或油灯在即将熄灭时的所发出的摇曳的光

Eg: On the cold night, I sat in front of the only one candle which was flickering.

flash / glim / glint / glisten / flicher

pasture n. 牧场

idyllic adj. 田园诗的

He is leading an idyllic life

virtually adv. 几乎;差不多

dubious adj. 可疑的,怀疑的

doubtful / uncertain / questionable / suspicious / sceptical

dubious

be dubious about/of 对 ...怀疑, 对 ...不肯定, 主要表示不肯定的, 不确定的

doubt / suspect

I doubt whether he stole the car. 语气不太肯定

suspicious / doubtful

Cats are suspicious of human beings.

I am not sure about your ability to do so.

I am doubtful of your ability.

I am dubious about your ability.

questionable 强调质疑,有问题的,值得争议的

This is a questionable conclusion / decision.

sceptical 怀疑论的,怀疑的 (正式用法)

```
suspicious
Your idea is sceptical.
dubious / dubious about ( of ) / doubtful / uncertain / suspicious / sceptical /
questionable
  privilege n.
                 特权
               苦难
  misery n.
  acquaintance n.
                       熟人
            难得的乐事,享受
  treat n.
be one's treat
1. ..请客 == sb. stand treat
Eg: Let's go to have dinner. It's my treat
treat sb. to
take sb. to dinner
Eg: It?s my pleasure to take you t
                                          o dinner.
stand treat
                我作东。
I stand treat
2. 对待
treat sb. as
I treat him as my best friend.
                 跟某人商谈
treat with sb.
```

I can?t bring it to a conclusion. I want to treat with you.

treat of sth. / sb. ==speak of

We speak / treat of tramps contemptuously.

## 2. 荣幸,享受

Eg: Having dinner with you is my treat.

treat sb. to 宴请某人 ...

Eg: It's my pleasure to treat you to dinner.

treat sb as 按 ...对待某人

Eg: I treat him as my best friend.

treat with sb. 跟某人商谈

Eg I can't bring it to a conclusion. I want to treat with you.

treat of sth./sb. 关于 ... , 提及到 ... , = = speak of

Eg: We treat of tramps contemptuously.

dweller n. 居住者

stagger v. 摇晃;蹒跚

exotic adj. 寻乎寻常的,外来的

glow n. 白炽光

descend v. 下落,降临

Eg: darkness descends very soon because winter is coming.

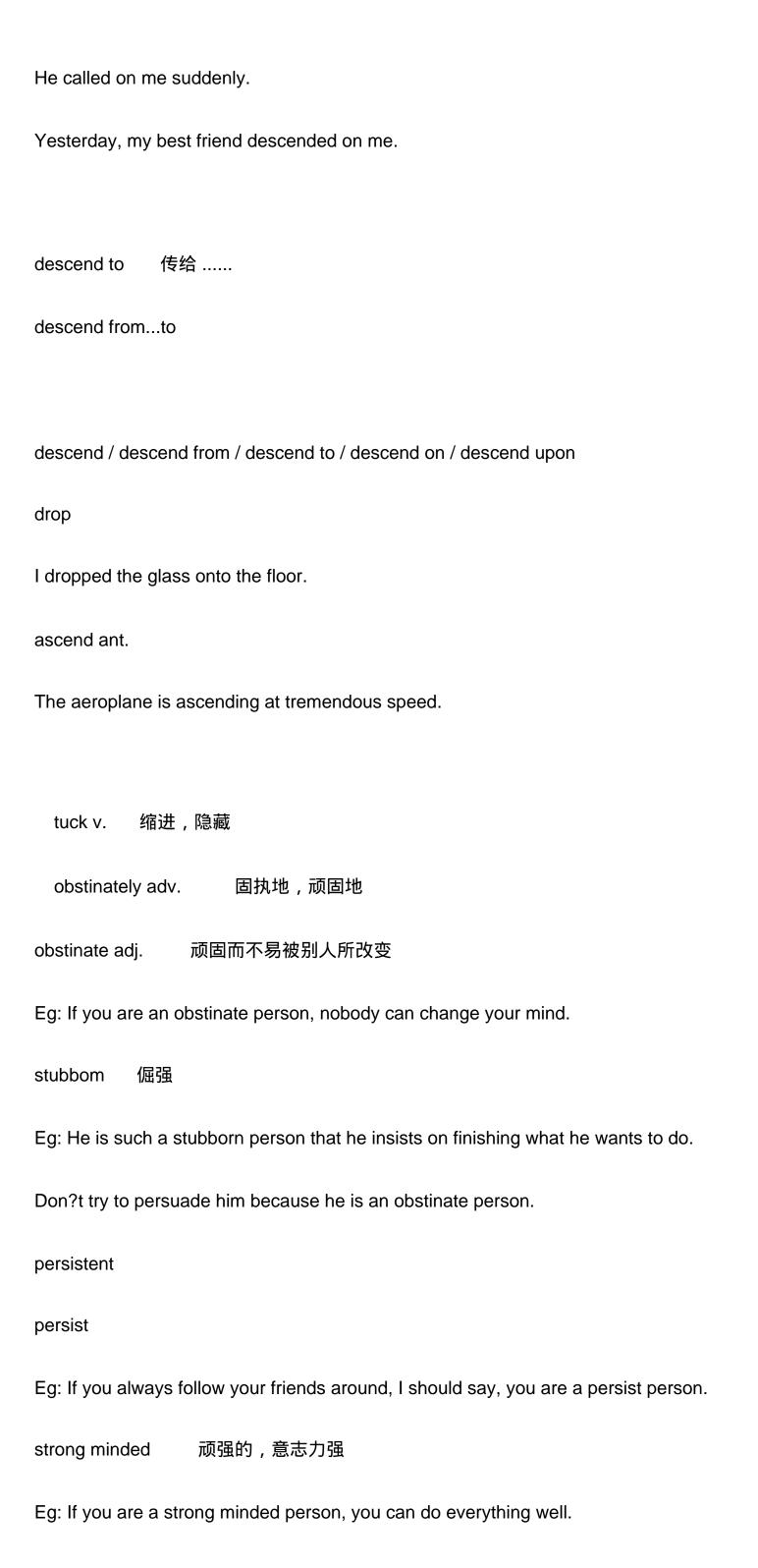
descend from 从 ...... 传下来

Eg: The watch descended from his grandfather.

descend on / upon 突然袭击,

He visited me suddenly.

He looked me up suddenly.

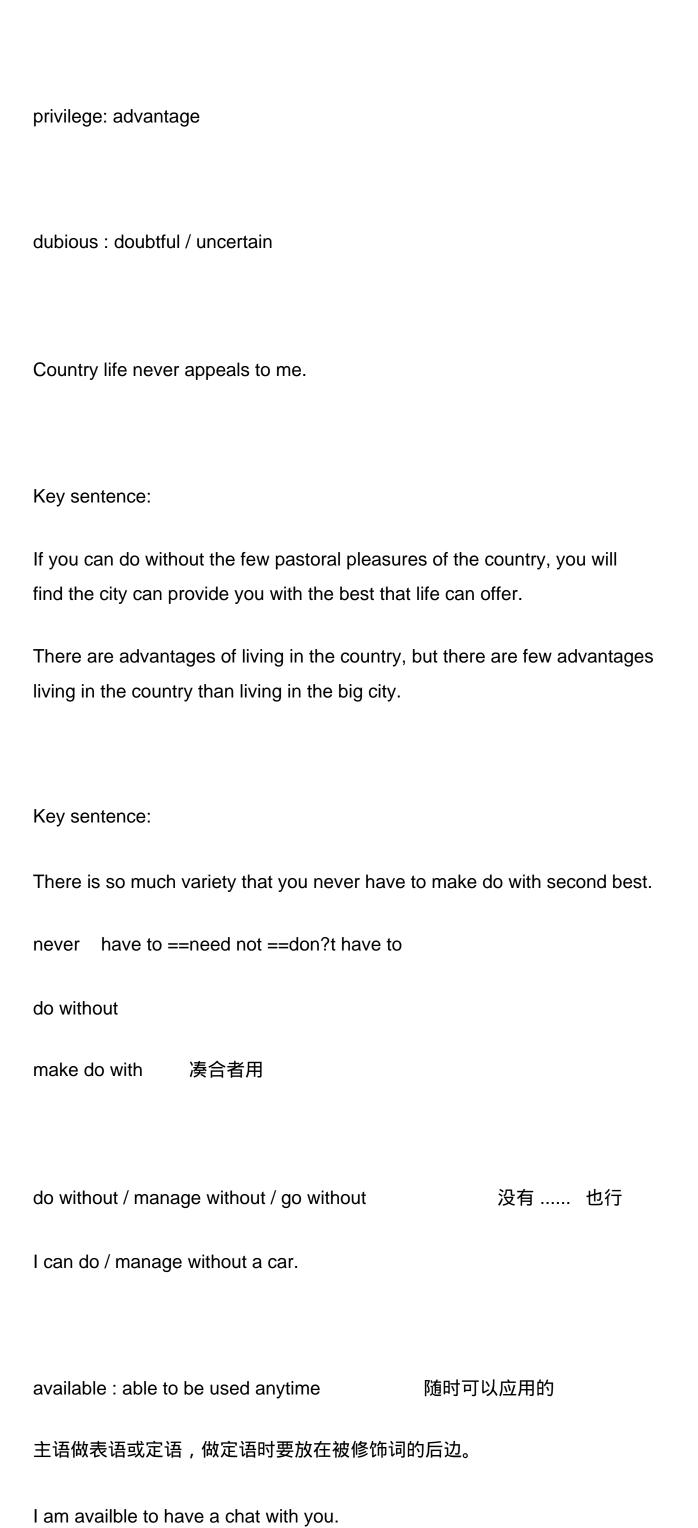


as stubborn as mule 像牛一样倔强 (骡子)	
三、【课文精析】	
Key sentence:	
The quiet life of the country has never appealed to me.	
city born and city bred ==as One was born and bred in a city	蚀立主格结构
regard as	
think ofas / refer toas	
go into raptures 变得欣喜若狂起来	
Key sentence:	
Most of my friends live in the city, yet they always go into raptures at the mere mention of the country.	
at the mere mention of   一提到	
at the sight of   一看到	
at the touch of 一触及到	
at the news of   一听到	

一听到

at the sound of

at the nemtion of 一提到
exalt / laud
hypocritical 虚伪
Key sentence:
The country life never appeals to me, and never appeals to others, either.
keep on doing sth.
Key sentence:
Even he still lives under the illusion that country life is somehow superior to town life.
under the illusion that
live under the illusion that
Country life is somehow superior to town life.
Every picture has got two sides.     凡事都有两方面
Key sentence:
Why people are prepared to tolerate a four-hour journey each day for the dubious privilege of living in the country is beyond me.
be beyond me = is beyond my understanding 是我无法理解的



The books in our classroom are available for you.
be available for sb.
I have a dictionary available for you.
inconvenience of living in the country
major : great / demanding
draw to its close = near its end 临近结束 / 尾声
Key sentence:
The city dweller never experiences anxieties of this sort.
We can keep ourselves free from the anxieties of this sort which afflict the country dweller.
Eating food with different tasts is also a pleasure.
run wild   发疯
Key sentence:
Country people run wild when they go shopping in the city and stagger home loaded with as many of the necessities of life as they can carry.
nome loaded with as many of the necessities of the as they can carry.
nor without   双重否定
The city has got its own beauty.

Don?t shed blood

deserted : enpty

all these things: all the pleasures of the city / all the advantages of living in the city

There are fewer advantages of the country than in the city.

There are more disadvantages of the country than those of the city.

extol the virtues

extol = praise highly

praise 比 extol 的语义要弱得多

virtue 美德 = advantage

illusion 幻觉,错觉 = false idea

superior 比 ...... 有优势 , ==better than

maintain == hold

glinting 闪烁 = glisten

tolerate 忍受 == endure, bear, stand, put up with, suffer without complaining

beyond me == can not be understood by me

beyond my understanding

## 一、【 Text 】课文

Insurance companies are normally willing to insure anything. Insuring public or private property is a standard practice in most countries in the world. If, however, you were holding an open air garden party or a fete it would be equally possible to insure yourself in the event of bad weather. Needless to say, the bigger the risk an insurance company takes, the higher the premium you will have to pay. It is not uncommon to hear that a ship ping company has made a claim for the cost of salvaging a sunken ship. But the claim made by a local authority to recover the cost of salvaging a sunken pie dish must surely be unique.

Admittedly it was an unusual pie dish, for it was eighteen feet long and six feet wide. It had been purchased by a local authority so that an enormous pie could be baked for an annual fair. The pie committee decided that the best way to transport the dish would be by canal, so they insured it for the trip. Shortly after it was launched, the pie committee went to a local inn to celebrate. At the same time, a number of teenagers climbed on to the dish and held a little party of their own. Dancing proved to be more than the dish could bear, for during the party it capsized and sank in seven feet of water.

The pie committee telephoned a local garage owner who arrived in a recovery truck to salvage the pie dish. Shivering in their wet clothes, the teenagers looked on while three men dived repeatedly into the water to locate the dish. They had little difficulty in finding it, but hauling it out of the water proved to be a serious problem. The sides of the dish were so smooth that it was almost impossible to attach hawsers and chains to the rim without damaging it. Eventually chains were fixed to one end of the dish and a powerful winch was put into operation. The dish rose to the surface and was gently drawn towards the canal bank. For one agonizing moment, the dish was perched precariously on the bank of the canal, but it suddenly overbalanced and slid back into the water. The men were now obliged to try once more. This time they fixed heavy metal clamps to both sides of the dish so that they could fasten the chains. The dish now had to be lifted vertically because one edge was resting against the side of the canal. The winch was again put into operation and one of the men started up the truck. Several minutes later, the dish was successfully hauled above the surface of the water. Water streamed in torrents over its sides with such force that it set up a huge wave in the canal. There was danger that the wave would rebound off the other side of the bank and send the dish plunging into the water again. By working at tremendous speed, the men managed to get the dish on to dry land before the wave returned.

insure v. 投保

fete n. 游园会

premium n. 保险费

recover v. 使…… 得到补偿,弥补

admittedly adv. 公认地

purchase v. 买

annual adj. 一年一度的

teenager n. (13 至 19 岁的)青少年

capsize v. (船)翻

shiver v. 打颤,发抖

dive v. (头向下)跳水

haul v. 拖曳

hawser n. 粗缆绳

rim n. (圆形物品的)外沿,边

winch n. 绞车

agonizing adj. 精神紧张的,提心吊胆的

perch v. 处于

precariously adv. 危险地,不稳固地

overbalance v. 失去平衡

clamp n. 夹钳,夹板

vertically adv. 垂直地

torrent n. 激流,洪流

rebound v. 弹回

insure v. 投保

insure== make a contract that promises to pay a sum of money in case of accident, damage, loss, etc.

insure sb/sth against 给 ...上保险以防 ...

insurance n.

insurance company 保险公司

assure 向 ...... 保证,使确信,它的宾语一定是人。

I assure you that I?ll bring you happiness. 我向你保证能给你带来幸福。

ensure v. 保证,确保 宾语可以是物

Hard work can ensure our success.

guarantee 担保(指担保人的优秀品质,视之某物的质量

I can guarantee the watch for ten months.

fete n. 游园会

premium n. 保险费

recover v. 使 ...... 得到补偿,弥补

recover vi 康复 recover from

recover vt. ==make up for, compensate for

Eg: Nothing can recover our health.

regain 经过努力而获得 ......

regain one?s courage 重新获得勇气

recover one?s courage 恢复勇气

He regained / recovered his enthusiasm.

他又恢复了他的热情。

restore vt. 恢复健康 ,恢复原状

He has been restored.

heal 治愈伤口

His wound has healed. 他的伤口已经痊愈了。

admittedly adv. 公认地

inevitably 不可避免地

Admittedly he is a great person.

admittedly == we are admitting that

purchase v. 买

buy vt.

purchase 比 buy 要正式,主要用于书面语,还可以是名词

Can you purchase fredom with money?

purchase money 买进的价格

purchasing power 购买力

Eg: His life is not worth a day?s purchase.

annual adj. 一年一度的

teenager n. (13 至 19 岁的)青少年

capsize vi. (船)翻

Eg: The ship capsized because of the rough wave.

shiver v. 打颤,发抖

shiver == tremble

整体的颤抖用 shiver, 部分的用 tremble

Eg: His hands are trembling.

He is shivering with cold.

Eg: His trembling voice betrayed his secret.

他颤抖的声音泄漏了他的秘密。

Shudder 因为寒冷害怕的因素导致的全身抖动

dive v. (头向下)跳水

haul v. 拖曳

haul == pull with effort our force

强调用力去拉

Eg: They hauled the boat up the beach.

pull 连续不断地拉 (应用范围最广泛)

drag 拖拉 (两者之间有摩擦力 )

Eg: The stone was so heavy that I had to drag it into the room.

After a day?s hard work, I dragged myself home.

工作了一天我拖着疲惫的身躯回了

家

Drag oneself to 拖着疲惫的身躯去 .....

tug 强调飞快的拖拉

Tow 借助外力拖拉较大较重的物体

hawser n. 粗缆绳

rim n. (圆形物品的)外沿,边

winch n. 绞车

agonizing adj. 精神紧张的,提心吊胆的

agonize v. 使精神紧张,使极度痛苦

agonized 感到精神紧张

agony n. == great pain 极度痛苦

He couldn?t carry out his resolution so he was so agony. 感到极度痛苦。 他不能实现他的坚定的决心而

At the news he is in an agony of joy.

听到消息他感到极度的高兴。( agony 加强语气)

perch v. 处于(高处)

locate, situate 是正式用词, vt.

perch vi.

A bird perched on the branch of the tree for the moment.

perch on 栖息

The little village perches among the hills. 这个小山村高高地位于群山之中。

Knock sb off his perch 打败、击败

Eg: I knocked him off his perch yesterday.

come off one?s pe rch 不再骄傲自大 = put your pride in your pocket.

put your pride in your pocket.

precariously adv. 危险地,不稳固地

Precarious = unsafe, unsteady, not firm

强调不安全,不稳定,不稳固而导致的危险

An actress?s life would be too precarious for me.

不稳定

dangerous 危险的常用词

Eg: Playing with matches is dangerous.

hazardous 碰运气的,冒险的 而导致的危险

Climbing the high mountain is hazardous.

adventruous 爱冒险的,胆子很大的

perilous 语义程度比 dangerous 要高的多,强调被伤害或被杀害的危险

Eg: It is perilous to do so. 这么做有可能会丢了性命。

overbalance v. 失去平衡

clamp n. 夹钳,夹板

vertically adv. 垂直地

vertical adj.

反义词: horizontlly 平行地

horizon 地平线

I draw a line vertically / horizontally.

torrent n. 激流,洪流

torrent = rough wave

rebound v. 弹回

Eg: The ball is rebounded. 球被弱回来了。

### 三、【课文精析】

In the event of == in case of 以防万一; 如果发生;倘若

In the even t of being sick, you?d better not go to the party.

in the event that

You must work harder and harder in the event that you get the frustration.

In the event that you will get the frustration you must work harder and harder.

Key sentence:

Needless to say, the bigger the risk an insurance company takes, the higher the premium you will have to pay.

Take the risk 冒险,承担风险

Key sentence:

It is not uncommon to hear that a ship ping company has made a claim for the cost of salvaging a sunken ship.

## 双重否定:

1, Not + 否定 形容词: Is not unreasonable

2 , not + without I can?t live without you

3, no + not/ no + no There is no cat that doesn?t like fish

There is nothing he can?t do.

There is no rule that has no exception / that doesn?t have exception.

unique ==very much particular 独一无二
需要作出艰苦努力的自我约束: Self-discipline required a sedulous work.
to == in order to
From finding a right place to put the latest edition.
From finding the right place for us to put the latest edition.
这是一项可以使你学好英语的计划。
This is a good plan for you in order to learn English well. ( ) ×
This is a good plan for you to learn English well. (
the best way to do sth. 做某事的最好方法
progress 进展
Key sentence:
Dancing proved to be more than the dish could bear, for during the party it capsized
and sank in seven feet of water.
prove (to be )
Key sentence:
The pie committee telephoned a local garage owner who arrived in a
recovery truck to salvage the pie dish.

Shivering in their wet clothes, the teenagers looked on while three men dived repeatedly into the water to locate the dish.

difficulty 不可数名词, 费力

可数名词, 各种困难的事情

have much difficulty 很费力

haul 从下往上拖

drag 平行的拖拉,接触面的拖拉

Key sentence:

it was almost impossible to attach hawsers and chains to the rim without damaging it.

attach to

attach == tie 栓,系

rim == the sides of the dish

终于:强调失败的结果用 in the end 表示成功用 at last, eventually

eventually 重点强调经过努力而终于 .....

finally 只表示顺序的最后

put into operation = use

draw 表示连续不停地拉

For one agonizing moment, 在令人忐忑不安的瞬间

precariously == unsteady, unfirmly be obliged to do == be forced to do so that== in order that lift 提起,吊起,由低到高的动作 Key sentence: There was danger that the wave would rebound off the other side of the bank and send the dish plunging into the water again. send 造成,使得, + v-ing( 作宾语补足语 ) 什么使得你这么做呢? What sent you doing so? 如果大浪从对岸折回来的话,这个盘子就会重新落入水中。 Key sentence: pie dish would have been sent to water If the hoge wave had rebounded off the other side of the bank, it would have sent dish plunging into the water again.

manage to do == be able to do, succeed in doing

Lesson 44 Speed and comfort 又快捷又舒适

一、【 Text 】课文

People travelling long distances frequently have to decide whether they would prefer to go by land, sea, or air. Hardly anyone can positively enjoy sitting in a train for more than a few hours. Train compartments soon get cramped and stuffy. It is almost impossible to take your mind off the journey. Reading is only a partial solution, for the monotonous rhythm of the wheels clicking on the rails soon lulls you to sleep. During the day, sleep comes in snatches. At night, when you really wish to go to sleep, you rarely manage to do so. If you are lucky enough to get a sleeper, you spend half the night staring at the small blue light in the ceiling, or fumbling to find your ticket for inspection. Inevitably you arrive at your destination almost exhausted. Long car journeys are even less pleasant, for it is quite impossible even to read. On motorways you can, at least, travel fairly safely at high speeds, but more often than not, the greater part of the journey is spent on roads with few service stations and too much traffic. By comparison, fferry trips or cruises offer a great variety of civilized comforts. You can stretch your legs on the spacious decks, play games, meet interesting people and enjoy good food--always assuming, of course, that the sea is calm. If it is not, and you are likely to get seasick, no form of transport could be worse. Even if you travel in ideal weather, sea journeys take a long time. Relatively few people are prepared to sacrifice up to a third of their holidays for the pleasure of travelling by sea.

Aeroplanes have the reputation of being dangerous and even hardened travellers are intimidated by them. They also have the disadvantage of being tan expensive form of transport. But nothing can match them for speed and comfort. Travelling at a height of 30,000 feet, far above the clouds, and at over 500 miles an hour is an exhilarating experience. You do not have to devise ways of taking your mind off the journey, for an aeroplane gets you to your destination rapidly. For a few hours, you settle back in a deep armchair to enjoy the flight. The real escapist can watch a free film show and sip champagne on some services. But even when such refinements are not available, there is plenty to keep you occupied. An aeroplane offers you an unusual and breathtaking view of the world. You soar effortlessly over high mountains and deep valleys. You really see the shape of the land. If the landscape is hidden from view, you can enjoy the extraordinary sight of unbroken cloud plains that stretch out for miles before you, while the sun shines brilliantly in a clear sky. The journey is so smooth that there is nothing to prevent you from reading or sleeping. However you decide to spend your time, one thing is certain: you will arrive at your destination fresh and uncrumpled. You will not have to spend the next few days recovering from a long and arduous journey.

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

compartment n. 列车客车厢内的分隔间(或单间)

cramped adj. 窄小的

stuffy adj. 憋气的,闷气的

monotonous adj. 枯燥的,乏味的,单调的

rhythm n. 有节奏的运动

click v. 发出咔哒声

lull v. 催人欲睡

snatch n. 短时,片段

sleeper n. 卧铺

fumble v. 乱摸,摸索

inspection n. 检查

inevitably adv. 必然地,不可避免地

destination n. 目的地

exhaust v. 使精疲力尽

motorway n. 快车道

ferry n. 渡船

cruise n. 巡游船

civilize v. 使文明; civilization n. 文明; civilized adj. 文明的

spacious adj. 宽敞的

seasick adj. 晕船的; airsick adj. 晕飞机的; carsick adj. 晕车的

intimidate v. 恐吓,恫吓

disadvantage n. 短处,缺点

exhilarating adj. 使人高兴的,令人兴奋的

escapist n. 逍遥者

sip v. 呷,啜

champagne n. 香槟酒

refinement n. 精心的安排

breathtaking adj. 激动人心的;不寻常的

soar v. 高飞,翱翔

effortlessly adv. 不费力地

landscape n. 景色

fresh adj. 精神饱满的

uncrumpled adj. 没有跨下来

positively adv. 绝对地,完全地

in a positive way

doubt; doubtful; uncertain; dubious 表示不是很肯定

The food is positively uneatable.

Can you really do it positively?

在这儿相当于 sure, of cause, certainly, no problem

a piece of cake, no sweat, it?s a snack 都表示不成问题

I bet 我肯定

compartment n. 列车客车厢内的分隔间(或单间)

cramped adj. 窄小的

stuffy adj. 憋气的,闷气的

== airless

That classroom must be stuffy.

```
rhythm n.
               有节奏的运动
           发出咔哒声
  click v.
roar 车辆飞快行驶发出的声音
bark 狗叫
Don?t bark your order at me.
                       枯燥的,乏味的,单调的
  monotonous adj.
tedious, dull, uninteresting
monotonous == lacking variety
Eg: I don?t like the way of your teaching, it is monotonous.
I hate the monotonous rhythm of travelling by train.
                                                         冗长乏味的
         乏味的(重点突出
tedious
                             long and uninteresting
Eg: Your article is tedious.
dull 语意比较弱, = uninteresting
Eg: I can?t get along well with Mary, she is a dull girl.
   Look at that dull person.
                       由于疲劳而厌倦
Tiresome == tiring
tired
Eg: He is tired of sleeping on the floor, because he has done so for ten years.
Long lasting meetings are tiring.
You are tiresome.
You are a little bit tiresome.
```

handsome

bore v. bored adj. 持续时间过长而厌倦 boring adj. Eg: I am tired of doing so. I am bored with doing so. 我厌烦这么做。 be tired of be bored with 催人欲睡 lull v. vt. ==cause sb. to sleep Eg: The mother lulled her baby to sleep. 催人入睡 lull sb to sleep lull vi. 风和日丽 What a good day, the wind lulled. 催眠曲 lullaby 短时,片段 snatch n. catch, seize, grab, 断断续续地 in snatches Eg: On the train, we sleep in snatches.

sleeper n. 卧铺

fumble vt. 乱摸,摸索

Eg: He fumbled the door open. 他摸索着把门打开了。

He fumbled in his pocket for the key. search for inspection n. 检查 inevitably adv. 必然地,不可避免地 Eg: Human beings are mortal, so inevitable we make mistakes, no matter how wise and eminent you are. 目的地 destination n. 使精疲力尽 exhaust vt. exhausted adj. exhausting adj. tire out Eg: I?m exhausted. 我精疲力尽了。 什么使你精疲力尽呀? What exhausts you? I?m tired out. 使疲劳,使磨损 wear out worn worn out Eg: Look, your dress is worn out. 瞧,你的衣服穿坏了。 After a day?s work hard, I am worn out. knock out

He put his hand into his pocket to take the key out.

Knock sb out 1 , 把某人打晕, 2,某人筋疲力尽

Eg: The arduous work knocked me out.

这项艰难的工作使我精疲力尽。

Fatigue 使筋疲力尽,使疲劳(书面)

Eg: The piece of work fatigues me.

Does your work fatigue you?

motorway n. 快车道

express way, highway

ferry n. 渡船

cruise n. 巡游船

civilize v. 使文明

spacious adj. 宽敞的

Eg: Is your classroom spacious?

Our classroom is not so spacious as that one.

I would like to lie in the spacious classroom instead of sitting here.

==roomy

a roomy house

capacious 容量大的

capacity 容量

commodious 宽敞的,便利的 (== roomy and convenient)

Eg: The cinema is both roomy and convenient.

The cinema is commodious.

expansive 易膨胀的,广阔的

Eg: I?d like to appreciate expansive sea / ocean.

我喜欢欣赏浩瀚的海洋。

vast 幅员辽阔的

Eg: The desert in our country is vast, that is a major problem.

extensive 广泛的,广阔的

extensive reading 泛读

intensive reading 精读

Eg: You can enlarge you vocabulary by intensive reading.

widespread 流传广的,分布广的

Eg: The kind of news is widespread.

far-reaching 触及很远的,流传久远的

Eg: I have a good idea and it is far-reaching.

seasick adj. 晕船的

airsick 晕飞机的

carsick 晕车的

bicyclesick 晕自行车的

bussick 晕公交车的

homesick 想家的

分别在词尾加上后缀 -ness 变成名词

homesickness 思乡之情

intimidate v. 恐吓,恫吓

frighten, horrify, terrify

Eg: Nothing can intimidate me.

disadvantage n. 短处,缺点

exhilarating adj. 使人高兴的,令人兴奋的

exhilarate vt. == very much excite 比 excite 语义强烈得多,正式得多

Eg: I?m exhilatated by your visit. 对于你的来访我是高兴极了。

stimulate 刺激,激励

stimulate sb to do sth 激励某人做某事

Eg: Your courage stimulated me to do so.

inspire 激励(通过言辞)

Inspire sb to do 激励某人做某事(通过言辞)

Stir 鼓动,鼓舞

Eg: Who stired you to do it like this? You should look before you leap. 做?你应该三思而后行。

谁鼓动你这么

spur 刺激

Eg: His rude remarks spured me.

encourage

Eg: He always encourages me to study har

d when I?m unwilling to do so.

escapist n. 逍遥者

sip v. 呷,啜

vt & n.

== drink a little at a time.

take a sip of sth 喝一点

Eg: I?m really thirsty, would you mind my taking a sip of your coffee?

have a taste of sth 尝一点

Eg: I?m so hungry that I want to have a taste of your cake.

You can take a sip of my coffee, but my cake only belongs to me.

champagne n. 香槟酒

refinement n. 精心的安排

refine 使人精力充沛

Eg: Coffee always refined us.

Coffee always made us fresh.

breathtaking adj. 激动人心的;不寻常的

Eg: The picture takes my breath. 这幅画太美了。

The girl takes my breath.

The beautiful dress takes my breath.

decide to go for a trip 决定旅行

Eg: We decided to go for a breathtaking trip.

soar v. 高飞,翱翔

Eg: We can?t soar in the blue sky without wings.

soar effortlessly 自由翱翔

effortlessly adv. 不费力地

landscape n. 景色

landscape 指从高处或远处远望高看的这种大地的漂亮的风光

spectacle == extroordinary sight

scenery 自然风光

scene 场面

view 透过窗户看到的景色

Eg: Our classroom doesn?t have a good view.

The rising sun in the Tai Mountain is a spectacle / landscape.

fresh adj. 精神饱满的

a fresh man

Eg: Look at that guy, he is really fresh. 他很帅

uncrumpled adj. 没有跨下来

Eg: He went home fresh and uncrumpled.

# 三、【课文精析】

Key sentence:

People travelling long distances frequently have to decide whether they would prefer to go by land, sea, or air.

现在分词短语修饰 people

people who travel long distance frequently

frequently 定期地,经常地 quite often

have to decide== have to make up their mind

Key sentence:

Long car journeys are even less pleasant, for it is quite impossible even to read.

The writer emphasize disadvantage of travelling by train.

Travelling by car is moeunpleasant than travelling in the train.

fairly 的语气是最弱的

more often than not 主要用在书面语言当中, means very often, usually, frequetly

By comparison 通过对比

offer == provide

comforts 在这儿指代 service

Be likely to do 有可能 ......

== it is probable that

could not be + 形容词比较级 , can not be + 形容词比较级 , no ... could be 表示 没有什么比 ... "

Eg: Nobody can be more beautiful than you.

No place can / could be better. 没有什么地方比这儿更好。

relatively 相对来讲

Eg: A large number of people are prepared to sacrifice their higher pay for the privilege of becoming white collar.

Relatively, few people are prepared to sacrifice their holiday time for the dubious pleasure of travelling by sea.

dubious == uncertain == doubtful
Aeroplanes are famous / well-known for its being dangerous.
have the disadvantage of
have the reputation of
match sb. for
but nothing can be equal to them.
第二部分当中是采用对比法
It is almost impossible to take your mindoff the journey.
You don?t have to / needn?t devise ways of taking your mind off the journey.
hardly when
You had hardly had time to feel tired when you arrived at your destination.
on some services 在这里指代 on airplane
Keep one?s mind off 转移注意力
Keep sb. occupied 集中注意力
however == no matter how
Key sentence:

If you can do without the few pleasures of travelling by land, you will find aeroplanes provide up with the best.

#### 关于写作中衔接词的使用

- 1. 起 (开篇,引出论点): at first, firstly, in the beginning( 起初), first of all, at present(目前), nowadays, currently, to start with, to begin with ,for one thing( 首先), for another( 其次), in one hand 一方面, in the other hand 另一方面
- 2. 承: to start with, at the same time, at any rate 无论如何,

besides 此外,除了 ...之外还有, apart from, in addition, in addition to, furthermore,

in fact 事实上, actually, as a matter of fact, in reality, moreover, no doubt, without any doubt,

similarly 同样地, in the same way, meanwhile, in the meantime, obviously 明显地, particularly,

such as, for example, for instance, consequently, as a consequence, as a result,

what is more, what is worse, what is better

above all

3.折: after all 毕竟,终究,all the same 虽然,但是, anyway 无论如何,somehow, but, however, nevertheless, nonetheless, by the time 到这个时候,此时, conversely, on the contrary, despite, in spite of, in contempt of, in disregard of, by contrast, by comparison, fortunately, in other words 换句话说, on the other hand, unlike 和 ......不同,不像,whereas 然而,

Eg: He made a mistake, after all he is a child aged 5.

Even though you are not of most help, I?m grateful to you just the same.

I had expected myself to pass the examination, somehow I failed.

I don? t have the ability to do the work, fortunately my friends romise me to help me.

4.合: 主要是用来小结上文的或是用作结尾段 : accordingly 于是,因此, as has been noted (above) 如前所述的, as has been mentioned, as has been talked of,

新闻报道的威力

at last, finally, lastly, at length,

briefly 简而言之, in brief, in short, in a word, in conclusion, in sum, in summary, to sum up, to summarize, to conclude, on the whole 总起说来

no doubt 毫无疑问, undoubtedly, truly, certainly, positively, surely, obviously,

Lesson 45 The power of the press

#### 一、【 Text 】课文

In democratic countries any efforts to restrict the freedom of the press are rightly condemned. However, this freedom can easily be abused. Stories about people often attract far more public attention than political events. Though we may enjoy reading about the lives of others, it is extremely doubtful whether we would equally enjoy reading about ourselves. Acting on the contention that facts are sacred, reporters can cause untold suffering to individuals by pub- lishing details about their private lives. Newspapers exert such tremendous influence that they can not only bring about major changes to the lives of ordinary people but can even overthrow a government.

The story of a poor family that acquired fame and fortune overnight, dramatically illustrates the power of the press. The family lived in Aberdeen, a small town of 23,000 inhabitants in South Dakota. As the parents had five children, life was a perpetual struggle against poverty. They were expecting their sixth child and faced with even more pressing economic problems. If they had only had one more child, the fact would have passed unnoticed. They would have continued to struggle against economic odds and would have lived in obscurity. But they suddenly became the parents of quintuplets, four girls and a boy, an event which radically changed their lives. The day after the birth of the five children, an aeroplane arrived in Aberdeen bringing sixty reporters and photographers.

The rise to fame was swift. Television cameras and newspapers carried the news to everyone in the country. Newspapers and magazines offered the family huge sums for the exclusive rights to publish stories and photographs. Gifts poured in not only from unknown people, but from baby food and soap manufacturers who wished to advertise their products. The old farmhouse the family lived in was to be replaced by a new \$500,000 home. Reporters kept pressing for interviews so lawyers had to be employed to act as spokesmen for the family at press conferences. While the five

babies were still quietly sleeping in oxygen tents in a hospital nursery, their parents were paying the price for fame. It would never again be possible for them to lead normal lives. They had become the victims of commercialization, for their names had acquired a market value. Instead of being five new family members, these children had immediately become a commodity.

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

democrat 民主的

restrict v. 限制

abuse v. 滥用

contention n. 论点

untold adj. 数不尽的,无限的

South Dakota 南达科他州 (美国)

perpetual adj. 永久的

quintuplet n. 五胞胎之一

obscurity n. 默默无闻

radically adv. 彻底地,完全地

exclusive adj. 独占的,独家的

nursery n. 育婴室,保育室

commercialization n. 商品化

commodity n. 商品

democrat 民主的

restrict v. 限制

keep within a certain limit

Eg: The prisoners? activity is restricted within marrow limits.

limit: 表示时间、空间、程度等方面的限定,且限定到某一个点

restrict: 只说明限定范围

Eg: Land development must be limited.

He restricts himself to two cigarettes a day.

restrict sb. to 限制在 ..... 范围内

confine

confine sb. to

Eg: The boy is confined to the dark room.

The boy is restricted to the dark room.

cramp 限制(限制某人的活动或是限制动植特的生长)

Eg: No body can cramp children.

You can not cramp my activity.

hamper 限制,妨碍;困累

Eg: What hampered you to do so?

The housewife has a lots to do every day, because she is hampered by poverty.

My limited vocabulary hampered my reading.

I am hampered by my limited vocabulary.

impede 限制;妨碍

impede doing sth.

Eg: Nothing will impede my studying English.

bound 限定,以 ...... 为界限

abuse v. 滥用

Eg: Don?t abuse your authority. 不要滥用职权。

We should n?t abuse our rights. 不能乱用自己的权力。

For VIP, they shouldn?t abuse their privilege.

contention n. 论点

untold adj. 数不尽的,无限的

==too many to be counted

Eg: There are untold stars in the sky.

I am afflicted by / with untold anxieties.

numerous 无数的

countless anxieties 无数的烦恼

Eg: As human being, we can?t keep ourselves free from countless anxieties.

countable: can be counted

uncountable

number

numberless 无数的,没有房号的

Eg: This is a numberless room. 这是一个没有房号的房间。

numberable 数得清的

innumberable 不能数得清的

South Dakota 南达科他州 (美国)

perpetual adj. 永久的

```
permanent
eternal
lasting for a long time
everlasting
              不休止的,一直持续下去的,不易受阻的
perpetual:
Eg: They are as poor as church mouse, they have to struggle against perpetual
poverty.
           连续的,不断的
constant
constactly
                                雨不停地下着。
Eg: It is raining constantly.
             连续不断的
continuous
Eg: They have continuous discussion.
They have continuous attempt.
They made great success in their continuous attempt.
           频繁的
continual
continually adj.
Eg: It rains continually.
                           最近频繁地在下雨。
It is raining continuously / constantly.
lasting
             持久的,耐久的
everlasting
Eg: The pair of trousers is lasting.
Generally speaking, jeans are lasting.
endless
```

Eg: You can appreciate endless unbroken clouds.

Studying English is our perpetual task.

eternal adj. 永恒的,永久的,不朽的

immortal

Eg: His name is immortal because the longest suspension bridge was named for him.

temporary

temporary job.

permanent 非临时的,永久的

Eg: In a big city, sometimes we can not get permanent job.

constant; continuous; everlasting; lasting; endless; eternal; permanent; perpetual

quintuplet n. 五胞胎之一

obscurity n. 默默无闻

in obscurity

Eg: He is in obscurity.

obscure adj. 不起眼的

Eg: The bus stopped at a obscure bus stop.

radically adv. 彻底地,完全地

completely, entirely, thoroughly, fully, inclusive

exclusive adj. 独占的,独家的

exclusive 独占的,独家的 (not share with others )

Eg: The swimming pool is for my exclusive use.

Eg: The newspaper offered a large sum of money to the person to get exclusive right to publish his article.

exclusive 排外的,排它的

inclusive 包括在其中的

Eg: The school is exclusive, only very clever children can go to it.

这所学校很排外,只有特别聪明的孩子可以在这儿上学。

The store is exclusive, only very wealthy people can visit it.

这个商场很排外,只有特别有钱的人才能光顾。

nursery n. 育婴室,保育室

commercialization n. 商品化

commodity n. 商品

commodity economy 商品经济

commodity market 商品市场

goods, wares

## 三、【课文精析】

Key sentence:

In fact, the power of the press is beyond our description.

any efforts are rightly condemned.

effort 企图 尝试 try; attempt make every effort; spare no effort; make every endeavor go to great lenghts blame scold reproach reprimand 正式的谴责 condemn deed 行为,行径 Eg: Your deeds should be rightly condemned. 森林当局 forest authorities 教育当局 education authorities 有关当局 the authorities the authorities of the press 新闻当局 According to this sentence, we know we are much more interested in private stories. Sometimes some people even want to smell out people?s secrets or particular scandals.

替代 story about people

lives of others:

extremely doubtful == extremely uncertain == extremely dubious. Eg: If a family sk eleton is reviewed, one?s reputation will be damaged / destroyed / spoiled / ruined immediately. equally == in the same way = alile We wouldn?t like our secret to be reviewed. 以 ..... 来行事, 遵循 ..... 来行事 Acting on that 引导的部分是 contention 的同位语从句 Key sentence: When stories published in details by the press are wonderful, you will become famous very soon. If the story is terrible, your reputation will be ruined immediately. exert... on sth. bring about 带来,导致 lead to cause result in major: great, considerable In the first paragraph the writer illustrate how powerful the press is in the general way.

acquire: gain == obtain

acquire fortune: 发财 出了名 acuire fame make fortune 城市居住者 the city dweller 乡村居住者 the country dweller expect a baby in the interesting condition in the family way pregnant 面临 be faced with 窗户朝南 The window faces the south. In the process of studying English, We are faced with a great many problems, which should be surmounted. 克服 surmount 解决问题 solve problem In teh process of studying English, we are faced with a great many problems, which should be surmounted / got rid of / removed as quickly as possible. economic: problems = poverty 紧迫的 pressing 形容词做状语 unnoticed odds n. 各种让人烦的小事

bear 容忍;生育 born 是 bear 的过去分词

attract the attention of the press

The rise to the fame is swift==Their being famous was rapid.

huge sums ==huge sums of money

care for 关心

press for == demand

形象地表达出不停的催问

Eg: The students kept pressing for examinations.

Lesson 46 Do it yourself

自己动手

一、【 Text 】课文

So great is our passion for doing things for ourselves, that we are becoming increasingly less dependent on specialized labour. No one can plead ignorance of a subject any longer, for there are countless do-it-yourself publications. Armed with the right tools and materials, newlyweds gaily embark on the task of decorating their own homes. Men, particularly, spend hours of their leisure time installing their own fireplaces, laying out their own gardens; building garages and making furniture. Some really keen enthusiasts go so far as to build their own computers. Shops cater for the do-it-yourself craze not only by running special advisory services for novices, but by offering consumers bits and pieces which they can assemble at home. Such things provide an excellent outlet for pent up creative energy, but unfortunately not all of us are born handymen.

Some wives tend to believe that their husbands are infinitely resourceful and can fix anything. Even men who can hardly drive a nail in straight are supposed to be born electricians, carpenters, plumbers and mechanics. When lights fuse, furniture gets rickety, pipes get clogged, or vacuum cleaners fail to operate, some women assume that their husbands will somehow put things right. The worst thing about the do-it-yourself game is that sometimes even men live under the delusion that they can do anything, even when they have repeatedly been proved wrong. It is a question of pride as much as anything else.

Last spring my wife suggested that I call in a man to look at our lawn mower. It had broken down the previous summer, and though I promised to repair it, I had never got round to it. I would not hear of the suggestion and said that I would fix it myself. One Saturday afternoon, I hauled the machine into the garden and had a close look at it. As far as I could see, it only needed a minor adjustment: a turn of a screw here, a little tightening up there, a drop of oil and it would be as good as new. Inevitably the repair job was not quite so simple. The mower firmly refused to mow, so I decided to dismantle it. The garden was soon littered with chunks of metal which had once made up a lawn mower. But I was extremely pleased with myself. I had traced the cause of the trouble. One of the links in the chain that drives the wheels had snapped. After buying a new chain I was faced with the insurmountable task of putting the confusing jigsaw puzzle together again. I was not surprised to find that the machine still refused to work after I had reassembled it, for the simple reason that I was left with several curiously shaped bits of metal which did not seem to fit anywhere. I gave up in despair. The weeks passed and the grass grew. When my wife nagged me to do something about it, I told her that either I would have to buy a new mower or let the grass grow. Needless to say our house is now surrounded by a jungle. Buried somewhere in deep grass there is a rusting lawn-mower which I have prom-

ised to repair one day.

\_\_ \ \ \ New words and expressions

】生词和短语

plead v. 找(借口),辩解

ignorance n. 无知,不懂

publication n. 出版物

newlyweds n. 新婚夫妇

gaily adv. 愉快地,高兴地

leisure n. 空闲

keen adj. 热心的,渴望的

advisory adj. 咨询的

novice n. 新手

consumer n. 消费者,顾客

assemble v. 装配,组装

outlet n. 出路

creative adj. 创造性的

handyman n. 手巧的人,能工巧匠

resourceful adj. 足智多谋的

fuse v. 由于烧断保险丝而短路

rickety adj. 要散架的,晃动的

clog v. 堵塞

delusion n. 错觉

lawn mower 割草机

adjustment n. 调整

screw n. 螺丝钉

dismantle v. 拆卸

chunk n. (厚)块

snap v. 绷断

insurmountable adj. 不能克服的,难以对付的

jigsaw n. 线锯

nag v. 唠叨不休

rust v. 生锈

plead v. 找(借口),辩解

plead ignorance: 一无所知

Eg: The authorities plead ignorance.

I pleaded that I was ill so I couldn?t go to the party.

plead that...

pleadable 可辩护的

Eg: This is a pleadable case.

pleading n. 辩护,恳求

pleader n. 辩护人

beg vt. 肯求 (可怜地一再要求)

beg sb. not to do

ask 请求,要求(期待肯定的答复)

entreat: 请求(通过反反复复的请求,来说服、软化对方)

implore 要求(迫切地、痛苦地要求)

Eg: The poor man implored me for help.

ignorance n. 无知,不懂

publication n. 出版物

newlyweds n. 新婚夫妇

gaily adv. 愉快地,高兴地

leisure n. 空闲

spare time

leisure hours

at leisure 悠闲自得的,空闲的

Eg: I?m quite at leisure if you want to me to help you.

at one?s leisure 在某人空闲的时候,在某人高兴的时候

Eg: Look me up, at your leisure.

drop in me, at your leisure.

At your leisure, please call me.

w ait sb.?s leisure 等某人有空闲的时候

keen adj. 热心的,渴望的

eager, anxious

be keen about 迷上,喜欢上

The boy is keen about footfall.

be keen on sth. 迷上,喜欢上(口)

anxious (焦急的心情,因焦虑而渴望)

eager (因特别想得到或拥有某物而渴求)

Eg: What are you eager for?

keen (因为极大的兴趣和欲念而热衷于)

advisory adj. 咨询的

novice n. 新手

consumer n. 消费者,顾客

assemble v. 装配,组装

assemble vi. 众多人的集会

==fit, put the parts / pieces together

Eg: It took me three hours to assemble thy bicycle.

amass, accumulate, collect, gather, assemble, store up, hold up

outlet n. 出路

排水口,通风口

a way through which sth. may go out

an outlet for water 排水口

an outlet for air 通风口

Eg: This is an outlet for you to get success.

He wants an outlet for his anger. 他需要一个出气筒。

outlet for

inlet 进口,入口

creative adj. 创造性的

inventive adj. 善于创造的,发明的

handyman n. 手巧的人,能工巧匠

resourceful adj. 足智多谋的

==witty 机智的,俏皮的,言辞巧妙的

wit 智慧,智谋

Eg: He?s in trouble and he?s witts ended.

wit: 智慧,智谋(通常用复数形式)

resource 资源;消遣,娱乐 ==entertainment, amusement

entertainment 为使某人开心而进行的娱乐和消遣 == amusement

resource 消遣的目的是为了打发时间

fuse v. 由于烧断保险丝而短路

rickety adj. 要散架的,晃动的

clog v. 堵塞

delusion n. 错觉

lawn mower 割草机

adjustment n. 调整

adjust 指调整,调节,使之适应

screw n. 螺丝钉

screw vt. 1. 拧

screw down 用螺丝钉固定住;约束

screw up 固定住;把 ..... 揉成一团

screw out 拧出来;勉强拿出,逼出

screw around 鬼混;闲逛

as he has a screw loose / missing

Eg: Don?t have a chat with him as he has a screw loose. 颠颠的。

不要跟他闲聊,他这个人疯疯

You must have your head screwed properly.

你必须保持头脑清醒。

dismantle v. 拆卸

take apart

He took a longmor apart.

chunk n. (厚)块

snap v. 绷断

猛咬( ==bite );拍快照

break suddenly

The chain snap suddenly.

snap one?s fingers at sb. 弹响指

snap sth. up 迅速地抓住机会抢购

Eg: The cheapist dresses were quickly snapped up. 抢购一空

in a snap 立刻,马上

It is a snap. 很轻松,小菜一碟

insurmountable adj. 不能克服的,难以对付的

==cannot be overcome

surmount: 克服 surmount difficulty

Eg:They are faced with insurmountable difficulties.

vanquish: 克服

jigsaw n. 线锯

nag v. 唠叨不休

rust v. 生锈

三、【课文精析】

本文非常优秀,一是在句子结构上,二是在系列短语上

Key sentence:

So great is our passion for doing things for ourselves, that we are becoming increasingly less dependent on specialized labour.

此句的基本句型是 so...that... 引导的结果状语从句 , 为了强调 great 这个词 , 把 so great 提到句首 , 因此主谓语要倒装。

passion 热情

passion for doing sth.

be / become dependent on independent

less dependent = more independent

specialized == skillful

Key sentence:

No one can plead ignorance of a subject any longer,

plead ignorance of sth. 对 ..... 一无所知

Eg: He pleade ignorance of the accident.

countless 不计其数的

Key sentence:

Armed with the right tools and materials, newlyweds gaily embark on the task of decorating their own homes.

armed with 佩戴上

gaily == happily, cheerfully

embark on doing sth. 从事做(新的、难度大的事情) ==start sth. (new or difficult)

lay out 安排,布置

go so far as to do: 竟然到了干 ...... 的地步

Eg: Oh, my god, he went so far as to refuse my demand.

She goes so far as to go shopping / with it shop every day.

keen: 感兴趣的,热心的

enthusiasm 热情

cater for 满足,迎合人们的需要 == provide what is necessary

Eg: Our school tries to cater for students needs / demands.

do-it-yourself 合成形容词

craze== passion

bits and pieces 备件,零件

特点:重复介词使用

in dread of: 害怕

Key sentence:

Such things provide an excellent outlet for pent up creative energy,

provide an outlet for: 寻找 ...... 出路

pent up :被压抑的 ==oppressed

potential 潜在的

not all of us 部分的否定

none of us 全部的否定

born : 生来就是

Key sentence:

Some wives tend to believe that their husbands are infinitely resourceful and can fix anything.

Some wives live under the illusion that their husbands are infinitely resourceful and can fix anything.

tend to: 倾向于

tend to do sth. 有 ..... 倾向

tend to sth. 照料,伺候 ==attend to ( 应付,对付 ==deal with)

Key sentence:

Even men who can hardly drive a nail in straight are supposed to be born electricians, carpenters,

be supposed to 

一致公认

Key sentence:

When lights fuse, furniture gets rickety, pipes get clogged, or vacuum cleaners fail to operate, some women assume that their husbands will somehow put things right.

presume: 表示猜测,主观判断,有事实可以依据

assume: 主观武断的认为

eg: You can stretch your legs on the spacious decks, play games, meet interesting people and enjoy good food--always assuming, of course, that the sea is calm.

Key sentence:

The worst thing about the do-it-yourself game is that sometimes even men live under the delusion that they can do anything, even when they have repeatedly been proved wrong.

The worst thing is that... 最糟糕的事情

delusion( 语气强烈 )==illusion

It is a question of pride as much as anything else.

It is a question of pride...

as much as anything (else) 加强语气 ==very, very much

call in a man to look at sth.

break down: 坏掉了

fail to operate

get / come round to sth. 抽出时间做某事

make time to do sth. / spare time to do sth.

Eg: I got round to writing the letter after two days delay.

as far as I could see == as far as I knew / as far as I could find / discover

在我看来

minor major

it would be as good as new

inevitably 不可避免地

lawn-mower.
be littered with 放满了
make up 表示一种状态
assemble: 强调动作
I had traced the cause of the trouble.
trace: 跟踪 ==find, discover
Key sentence:
After buying a new chain I was faced with the insurmountable task of putting the confusing jigsaw puzzle together again.
be faced with
confusing == puzzling, perplexing
for the simple reason that: 出于这个简单的原因
Key sentence:
Buried somewhere in deep grass there is a rusting lawn-mower which I have promised to repair one day.
buried somewhere in deep grass 连接上下文,加强语气,修饰 lawn mower
Lesson 47 Too high a price? 代价太高

一、【 Text 】课文

The garden was soon littered with chunks of metal which had once made up a

Pollution is the price we pay for an overpopulated, over industrialized planet. When you come to think about it, there are only four ways you can deal with rubbish: dump it, burn it, turn it into something you can use again, attempt to produce less of it. We keep trying all four methods, but he sheer volume of rubbish we produce worldwide threatens to overwhelm us.

Rubbish, however, is only part of the problem of polluting our planet. The need to produce ever-increasing quantities of cheap food leads to a different kind of pollution. Industrialized farming methods produce cheap meat products: beef, pork and chicken. The use of pesticides and fertilizers produces cheap grain and vegetables. The price we pay for cheap food may be already too high: Mad Cow Disease (BSE) in cattle, salmonella in chicken and eggs, and wisteria in dairy products. And if you think you'll abandon meat and become a vegetarian, you have the choice of very expensive organically-grown vegetables or a steady diet of pesticides every time you think you're eating fresh salads and vegetables, or just having an innocent glass of water!

However, there is an even more insidious kind of pollution that particularly affects urban areas and invades our daily lives, and that is noise. Burglar alarms going off at any time of the day or night serve only to annoy passers-by and actually assist burglars to burgle. Car alarms constantly scream at us in the street and are a source of profound irritation. A recent survey of the effects of noise revealed (surprisingly?) that dogs barking incessantly in the night rated the highest form of noise pollution on a scale ranging from 1 to 7. The survey revealed a large number of sources of noise that we really dislike. Lawn mowers whining on a summer's day, late-night parties in apartment blocks, noisy neighbors, vehicles of al kinds, especially large container trucks thundering through quiet village, planes and helicopters flying overhead, large radios carried round in public places and played at maximum volume. New technology has also made its own contribution to noise. A lot of people object to mobile phones, especially when they are used in public places like restaurants or on public transport. Loud conversations on mobile phones invade our thoughts or interrupt the pleasure of meeting friends for a quiet chat. The noise pollution survey revealed a rather spurring and possibly amusing old fashioned source of noise. It turned out to be snoring! Men were found to be the worst offenders. It was revealed that 20% of men in their mid-thirties snore. This figure rises to a staggering 60% of men in their sixties. Against these figures, it was found that only 5% of women snore regularly, while the rest are constantly woken or kept awake by their trumpeting partners. Whatever the source of noise, one thing is certain: silence, it seems, has become a golden memory.

pollution n. 污染

overpopulated adj. 人口多的

over-industrialized adj. 过度工业化的

sheer adj. 纯粹的,不掺杂的

worldwide adv. 在全世界

overwhelm v. 制服,使不知所措

pollute v. 污染

pesticide n. 杀虫剂

fertilizer n. 肥料

salmonella n. 沙门氏菌

listeia n. 利斯特杆菌

vegetarian n. 吃素的人

organically -grown adj. 有机培植的(不施化肥和其他化学品培植)

insidious adj. 暗中为害的

urban adj. 城市的

burglar n. 窃贼

burgle v. 入室偷窃

scream v. 尖叫

profound adj. 极度的

irritation n. 烦躁

incessantly adv. 连续不断地

whine v. 发呜呜声

helicopter n. 直升飞机

maximum adj. 最大的

technology n. 技术
contribution n. 贡献
mobile adj. 可移动的
snore v. 打鼾
offender n. 冒犯者
staggering adj. 令人惊愕的
rtumpet v. 吹号
partner n. 伙伴
pollution n. 污染
More and more water is been pollution.
Pollution is the major problem we are faced with.
pollute
polluted
pollution
polluter 污染源
Eg: Gases from cars are one of the polluters of air pollution.
contaminate
taint
defile
pollute
poison

```
overpeopled
sparsely-populated community
sparsely-peopled
population
Eg: What?s the population in your country?
Our country has a population of one billion.
The city has a population of two million.
population explosion
populous adj.
      公交车拥挤
crowd
                    crewed
Eg: The narrow street is populous with people.
The most populous province in China is Shichun.
province
The most populous country in the world is China.
                               过度工业化的
  over-industrialized adj.
               纯粹的,不掺杂的
  sheer adj.
有四个基本语意
1 . pure unmixed
              shere cliff
2. steep
3. complete
Eg: What are you talking about sheer nonsense?
4. transparent
sheer silk stockings
```

worldwide adv. 在全世界

overwhelm v. 制服,使不知所措

Eg: He was overwhelmed by grief. 他伤心至极

Grief seized him.

Your kindness quite overwhelms me. 您的这份好心使我感动得难以言表。(被你制服了)

If our country were overwhelm by pollution, it would be terrible.

conquer

overcome

get rid of

insumountable

vanquish

pollute v. 污染

pesticide n. 杀虫剂

fertilizer n. 肥料

salmonella n. 沙门氏菌

listeia n. 利斯特杆菌

vegetarian n. 吃素的人

organically-grown adj. 有机培植的(不施化肥和其他化学品培植)

insidious adj. 暗中为害的

urban adj. 城市的

burglar n. 窃贼

burgle v. 入室偷窃

scream at profound adj. 极度的 intence extreme complete Eg: Yesterday he had a profound sleep. He is afflicted with profound anxieties. knowledgable He is a profound scholar. 烦躁 irritation n. irritate v. 使烦躁 irriteted irriteting incessantly adv. 连续不断地 perpetual permanent eternal continuance continual

continually

尖叫

scream v.

```
constant
endless
incessant adj.
Eg: It has been raining incessantly for three hours.
There is a week of incessant rains.
ceaseless
none stop
unbroken
uninterrupted\\
Eg: Last night I had an uninterrupted party.
He gave us a talk uninterruped.
             发呜呜声
  whine v.
                  直升飞机
  helicopter n.
  maximum adj.
                    最大的
  technology n.
                   技术
                     贡献
  contribution n.
  mobile adj.
                可移动的
  snore v.
            打鼾
  offender n.
                冒犯者
  staggering adj.
                     令人惊愕的
surprise
amaze
```

astonish

astound
astounding
Eg: The old lady reported to the police and they felt astounded / found it staggering.
trumpet v. 吹号
partner n. 伙伴
三、【课文精析】
Key sentence:
Pollution is the price we pay for an overpopulated, over industrialized planet.
I was blamed for being late.
Losing health is the price he paid for his hard work./ (working hard/ over working )
come to ==get to
并列平行结构
There are some good ways to study English well.
listen, speak, read and write.
There are four good ways to study English: listening, speaking, reading and writering.
reuse it recyde it
Key sentence:
We keep trying all four methods, but he sheer volume of rubbish we
produce worldwide threatens to overwhelm us.

volume == amount
threaten to do
Eg: The coming earthquake threatens the village.
Dark clouds threaten a heavy storm.     乌云预示着有一场风暴。
The sun promises a good day.
It is possible
Key sentence:
The need to produce ever-increasing quantities of cheap food leads to a different kind of pollution.
leads to
Key sentence:
The price we pay for cheap food may be already too high
The price we pay is too high.
abandon 强调被迫放弃
organically-grown vegetable: 绿色蔬菜
every time: whenever
innocent (of) adj.   清白的,无辜的,无知的

暗中为害的,阴险的

insidious

Key sentence:
Burglar alarms going off at any time of the day or night serve only to annoy passers-by and actually ( to ) assist burglars to burgle.
Key sentence:
Car alarms constantly scream at us in the street and are a source of profound irritation.
Eg: Her husband earns a lot of money every mounth and he is a source of income. 他的丈夫每月能赚很多钱,这是他的一棵摇钱树。
Key sentence:
The survey revealed a large number of sources of noise that we really dislike.
名词结构 (平行结构)
lawn mower 割草机
container trucks: 集装箱卡车
sources of noise
Key sentence:
New technology has also made its own contribution to noise.
make contribution to 作出 的贡献
contribute to 引起,导致,是 的起因

Eg: Air pollution contributes to disease.

object to take o	object to			
Key sentence:				
Loud conversations pleasure of meeting			e our thoughts or interrupt t	he
Eg: The air pollution	survey r	evealed	空气污染调查显示	
turn out: prove				
offend: 惹怒 off	ender	罪魁祸首		
were found:     客观	抽处			
It is said				
It is revealed				
Key sentence:				
20% of mem in their	mid-thir	ties		
in their early thirties				
Key sentence:				
Against these figure	s, it was	found that		
Comparing these fig	ures, we	found that		
. 5	•			
are woken 被惊醒	醒 / I	keep awake	不能入睡	

比较:

Whatever the source of noise, one thing is certain: silence, it seems, has become a golden memory.

However you decide to spend your time, one thing is certain: you will arrive at your destination fresh and uncrumpled.

Lesson 48 The silent village

沉默的村庄

一、【 Text 】课文

In this much-travelled world, there are still thousands of places which are inaccessible to tourists. We always assume that villagers in remote places are friendly and hospitable. But people who are cut off not only from foreign tourists, but even from their own countrymen can be hostile to travellers. Visits to really remote villages are seldom enjoyable -- as my wife and I discovered during a tour through the Balkans.

We had spent several days in a small town and visited a number of old churches in the vicinity. These attracted many visitors, for they were not only of great architectural interest, but contained a large number of beautifully preserved frescoes as well. On the day before our departure, several bus loads of tourists descended on the town. This was more than we could bear, so we decided to spend our last day exploring the countryside. Taking a path which led out of the town, we crossed a few fields until we came to a dense wood. We expected the path to end abruptly, but we found that it traced its way through the trees. We tramped through the wood for over two hours until we arrived at a deep stream. We could see that the path continued on the other side, but we had no idea how we could get across the stream. Suddenly my wife spotted a boat moored to the bank. In it there was a boatman fast asleep. We gently woke him up and asked him to ferry us to the other side. Though he was reluctant to do so at first, we eventually persuaded him to take us.

The path led to a tiny village perched on the steep sides of a mountain. The place consisted of a straggling unmade road which was lined on either side by small houses. Even under a clear blue sky, the village looked forbidding, as all the houses were built of grey mud bricks. The village seemed deserted, the only sign of life being an ugly-looking black goat on a short length of rope tied to a tree in a field nearby. Sitting down on a dilapidated wooden fence near the field, we opened a couple of tins of sardines and had a picnic lunch. All at once, I noticed that my wife seemed to be filled with alarm. Looking up I saw that we were surrounded by children in rags who were looking at us silently as we ate. We offered them food and spoke to them kindly, but they remained motionless. I concluded that they were simply shy of strangers. When we later walked down the main street of the villager, we were followed by a silent procession of children. The village which had seemed deserted, immediately came to life. Faces appeared at windows. Men in shirt

sleeves stood outside their houses and glared at us. Old women in black shawls peered at us from doorways. The most frightening thing of all was that not a sound could be heard. There was no doubt that we were unwelcome visitors. We needed no further warning. Turning back down the main street, we quickened our pace and made our way rapidly towards the stream where we hoped the boatman was waiting.

二、【 New words and expressions

】 生词和短语

inaccessible adj. 难接近的,达不到的

hospitable adj. 不好客的

hostile adj. 不友好的,有敌意的

vicinity n. 周围,近邻

architectural adj. 建筑的

fresco n. 壁画

abruptly adv. 突然地,意外地

tramp v. 徒步行进

moor v. (用绳、链、锚)系(船)

ferry v. (用渡船)运

straggle v. 蔓延,散乱分布

sardine n. 沙丁鱼,沙丁鱼罐头

dilapidated adj. 陈旧破烂的,倒塌的

rag n. 破烂衣服

motionless adj. 不动的

procession adj. 不动的

shawl n. 披巾,围巾

peer v. 凝视,盯着

quicken v. 加快

inaccessible adj. 难接近的,达不到的

access n. 通路,通道

entrance 入口

accessible adj.: easy to get to / easy to understand

Eg: The book is accessible to learners / beginners.

The facts are accessible to all of us. 易于得到的 / 易于理解的

Eg: Heavy snow made the village inaccessible to traffic.

approach: v. 接近

approachable

unapproachable 无可匹敌的;难以接近的

Eg: He has got unapproachable beauty.

access: opportunity 机会

Eg: Only high officiales have access to him.

Only teacheres have access to the head master.

hospitable adj. 好客的

amiable 亲切的

cordial 热诚的,热心的

faithful 忠诚的

friendly 友好的

neighborly 和睦的

receptive 善于接受的,接纳的

hostile adj. 不友好的,有敌意的

unfriendly

be hostile to / be unfriendly to

antagonistic: 对抗性的,敌对的

effensive: 进攻性的

Eg: I took notice of his evvensive remarks.

aggressive; 挑畔的

vicinity n. 周围 ,近邻

in the vicinity / in the nerborhood 比后一个正式 (书面用词)

I often visit the fair in the vicinity.

vicinity: about

in the vicinity of

the inhabitant of the vicinity

architectural adj. 建筑的

fresco n. 壁画

abruptly adv. 突然地,意外地

tramp v. 徒步行进

moor v. (用绳、链、锚)系(船)

ferry v. (用渡船)运

straggle v. 蔓延,散乱分布

dilapidated adj. 陈旧破烂的,倒塌的

dilapidate vt. 使倒塌,便破损

dilapidation n.

batter v. 撞坏,撞击

battered adj.

Eg: It is easy to recognize the battered car.

broken-down

run down 渐渐变糟,恶化 ; run-down: 渐渐被恶化的

Eg: The doctor had not to do with his run-down renew.

sardine n. 沙丁鱼,沙丁鱼罐头

rag n. 破烂衣服

motionless adj. 不动的

procession adj. 不动的

shawl n. 披巾,围巾

peer v. 凝视,盯着

quicken v. 加快

## 三、【课文精析】

be accessible / inaccessible to sb. 是 ..... 难以达到的

not only from / but from 强调介词

cut off from: separate from / isolate from	与 隔绝
Key sentence:	
Visits to really remote villages are seldom enjoyable	
Eg: He is cut off from all his friends after he went abroa	ad.
Such people who are hostile to travellers are ones who	are cut off from the society.
of great interest	
beautifully-preserved	
Key sentence:	
On the day before our departure, several bus loads of too the town.	tourists descended
Key sentence:	
Taking a path which led out of the town, we crossed a came to a dense wood.	few fields until we
Key sentence:	
The village seemed deserted, the only sign of life being black goat on a short length of rope tied to a tree in a fi	
Key sentence:	
The village which had seemed deserted, immediately o	came to life.
Key sentence:	

The most frightening thing of all was that not a sound could be heard.

trace its way
make one?s way out of
fight one?s way  杀出一条路来
feel one?s way  摸出一条路
wind one?s way   碗延一条路
Key sentence:
but we had no idea how we could get across the stream.
a boat moored to the bank
a boatman fast asleep
fast asleep 熟睡
Key sentence:
The path led to a tiny village perched on the steep sides of a mountain.
Key sentence:
The place consisted of a straggling unmade road which was lined on either side by small houses.
on either side == on both sides

all at once == almost immediately

Key sentence:

I concluded that they were simply shy of strangers.

Lesson 49 The ideal servant

理想的仆人

一、【 Text 】课文

It is a good thing my aunt Harriet died years ago. If she were alive today she would not be able to air her views on her favourite topic of conversation: domestic servants. Aunt Harriet lived in that leisurely age when servants were employed to do housework. She had a huge, rambling country house called 'The Gables'. She was sentimentally attached to this house, for even though it was far too big for her needs, she persisted in living there long after her husband's death. Before she grew old, Aunt Harriet used to entertain lavishly. I often visited The Gables when I was boy. No matter how many guests were present, the great house was always immaculate. The parquet floors shone like mirrors; highly polished silver was displayed in gleaming glass cabinets; even my uncle's huge collection of books was kept miraculously free from dust. Aunt Harriet presided over an invisible army of servants that continuously scrubbed, cleaned, and polished. She always referred to them as 'the shifting population', for they came and went with such frequency that I never even got a chance to learn their names. Though my aunt pursued what was, in those days, an enlightened policy, in that she never allowed her domestic staff to work more than eight hours a day, she was extremely difficult to please. While she always criticized the fickleness of human nature, she carried on an unrelenting search for the ideal servant to the end of her days, even after she had been sadly disillusioned by Bessie.

Bessie worked for Aunt Harriet for three years. During that time she so gained my aunt's confidence that she was put in charge of the domestic staff. Aunt Harriet could not find words to praise Bessie's industriousness and efficiency. In addition to all her other qualifications, Bessie was an expert cook. She acted the role of the perfect servant for three years before Aunt Harriet discovered her 'little weakness'. After being absent from the Gables for a week, my aunt unexpectedly returned one afternoon with a party of guests and instructed Bessie to prepare dinner. No only was the meal well below the usual standard, but Bessie seemed unable to walk steadily. She bumped into the furniture and kept mumbling about the guests. When she came in with the last course -- a huge pudding -- she tripped on the carpet and the pudding went flying through the air, narrowly missed my aunt, and crashed on

the dining table with considerable force. Though this caused great mirth among the guests, Aunt Harriet was horrified. She reluctantly came to the conclusion that Bessie was drunk. The guests had, of course, realized this from the moment Bessie opened the door for them and, long before the final catastrophe, had had a difficult time trying to conceal their amusement. The poor girl was dismissed instantly. After her departure, Aunt Harriet discovered that there were piles of empty wine bottles of all shapes and sizes neatly stacked in what had once been Bessie's wardrobe. They had mysteriously found their way there from the wine cellar!

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

rambling adj. 杂乱无章的

sentimentally adv. 感情上,多情地

lavishly adv. 慷慨地,大方地

immaculate adj. 清洁的,无污点的

parquet n. 镶木地板

gleam v. 发亮,闪光

preside v. 指挥

invisible adj. 看不见的,无形的

scrub v. 擦拭,刷洗

enlightened adj. 开明的

fickleness n. 变化无常

unrelenting adj. 不屈不挠的,不松懈的

disillusion v . 使幻想破灭

industriousness n. 勤奋

qualification n. 资格,能力

mirth n. 欢笑,高兴

stack v. 整齐地堆放 cellar n. 地窖 rambling adj. 杂乱无章的 ramble vi. 1. 闲逛,漫步

stroll

go for a walk / have a walk

go for a stroll / have stroll

They rambled through the ferast.

2. 漫谈,聊开

Eg: The old lady began to ramble about her youth.

3. 植物的蔓延生长

Eg: The wild roses ramble over the fance.

感情上,多情地 sentimentally adv.

sentiment n.

sentiments 情操

恻陷之心 The sentiments of pity:

感情(总称) emotion

out of sentiments: 出于同情

sentimental adj. emotional

慷慨地,大方地 lavishly adv.

lavish adj. 慷慨的,大方的

eg: Are you lavished to your friend.

extravagant 挥霍的,奢侈的

lavish money on sth. /sb.

lavish praises on sb.

grudge 舍不得给

Eg: Do you lavish praises on your friends?

你总是大肆吹捧你的朋友吗?

lavish care on sb. 过度的关心或庞爱

generous 慷慨大方的

liberal: 开明的

prodigal: 浪费的,挥霍无度的

wasteful

反义词: thrifty, economical, frugal, not wasteful

immaculate adj. 清洁的,无污点的

spotless

parquet n. 镶木地板

gleam v. 发亮,闪光

preside v. 指挥

vi. preside at

Eg: Who will preside at the party?

Yesterday my friend visited me so I preside at tea.

招待

```
看不见的,无形的
 invisible adj.
visible
           擦拭,刷洗
 scrub v.
       润色
polish:
 enlightened adj.
                    开明的
                变化无常
 fickleness n.
 unrelenting adj.
                   不屈不挠的,不松懈的
strong-minded
continuous
                使幻想破灭
 disillusion v.
                      勤奋
 industriousness n.
                  资格,能力
 qualification n.
           欢笑,高兴 (书面化,文学中或诗歌中
 mirth n.
happiness, joy, merriment, fun, amusement, entertainment, delight, rapture
```

## 三、【课文精析】

stack v.

cellar n.

整齐地堆放

地窖

Key sentence:

favourite topic of conversation: domes	stic serv	ants.
air one?s views on sth. / sb.	对	发表意见
Key sentence:		
lived in that leisurely age when		
Key sentence:		
She was sentimentally attached to thi her needs, she persisted in living ther		, for even though it was far too big for after her husband's death.
attach to		
Key sentence:		
she persisted in living there long after	her hus	sband's death.
persist in doing sth.		
long after		
short after		
long before		
short before		
Key sentence:		
even my uncle's huge collection of bo	oks was	s kept miraculously free from
Key sentence:		
She always referred to them as 'the s went with such frequency that I never names .		

refer to / regard sb. as

If she were alive today she would not be able to air her views on her

While she always criticized the fickleness of human nature, she carried on an unrelenting search for the ideal servant to the end of her days, even after she had been sadly disillusioned by Bessie.
carry on
During that time
put sb. in charge of 安排某人负责
in addition to
act the role: play the role
be absent from: be away from not only   位于句首,引导完整的语句,部分倒装
below, above 常用的修饰词是 well
bump into: knock oneself into / onto
reluctantly came to the conclusion that
come to the conclusion
draw a conclusion
arrive at conclusion

Key sentence:

reach conclusion

jump to conclusion

have a difficult time doing sth. : have trouble / difficulty in doing sth

Key sentence:

They had mysteriously found their way there from the wine cellar!

Lesson 50 New Year resolutions

新年的决心

一、【 Text 】课文

The New Year is a time for resolutions. Mentally, at least, most of us could compile formidable lists of 'dos' and 'don'ts'. The same old favorites recur year in year out with monotonous regularity. We resolve to get up earlier each morning, eat less, find more time to play with the children, do a thousand and one jobs about the house, be nice to people we don't like, drive carefully, and take the dog for a walk every day. Past experience has taught us that certain accomplishments are beyond attainment. If we remain inveterate smokers, it is only because we have so often experienced the frustration that results from failure. Most of us fail in our efforts at self-improvement because our schemes are too ambitious and we never have time to carry them out. We also make the fundamental error of announcing our resolutions to everybody so that we look even more foolish when we slip back into our bad old ways. Aware of these pitfalls, this year I attempted to keep my resolutions to myself. I limited myself to two modest ambitions: to do physical exercise every morning and to read more of an evening. An all-night party on New Year's Eve provided me with a good excuse for not carrying out either of these new resolutions on the first day of the year, but on the second, I applied myself assiduously to the task.

The daily exercises lasted only eleven minutes and I proposed to do them early in the morning before anyone had got up. The self-discipline required to drag myself out of bed eleven minutes earlier than usual was considerable. Nevertheless, I managed to creep down into the living room for two days before anyone found me out. After jumping about on the carpet and twisting the human frame into uncomfortable positions, I sat down at the breakfast table in an exhausted condition. It was this that betrayed me. The next morning the whole family trooped in to watch

the performance. That was really unsettling, but I fended off the taunts and jibes of the family good-humouredly and soon everybody got used to the idea. However, my enthusiasm waned. The time I spent at exercises gradually diminished. Little by little the eleven minutes fell to zero. By January 10th, I was back to where I had started from. I argued that if I spent less time exhausting myself at exercises in the morning, I would keep my mind fresh for reading when I got home form work Resisting the hypnotizing effect of television, I sat in my room for a few evenings with my eyes glued to a book. One night, however, feeling cold and lonely, I went downstairs and sat in front of the television pretending to read. That proved to be my undoing, for I soon got back to my old bad habit of dozing off in front of the screen. I still haven't given up my resolution to do more reading. In fact, I have just bought a book entitled How to Read a Thousand Words a Minute. Perhaps it will solve my problem, but I just haven't had time to read it!

二、【 New words and expressions

】生词和短语

resolution n. 决心

mentally adv. 内心里

compile v. 编辑,编制

formidable adj. 令人畏惧的

recur v. 再发生,又出现

regularity n. 规律性

accomplishment n. 成就

attainment n. 达到

inveterate adj. 根深蒂固的

selfimprovement n. 自我完善

scheme n. 简单的计划,方案

ambitious adj. 雄心勃勃的

pitfall n. 意外的困难,易犯的错误

modest adj. 要求不过分的

assiduously adv. 刻苦地

self-discipline n. 自我约束

frame n. 躯体

betray v. 暴露,显露

troop v. 成群结队地走动

unsettle v. 使不安

taunt n. 嘲笑,奚落人的话

jibe n. 嘲弄,挖苦

good-humouredly adv. 和气地,心情好地

wane v. 逐渐变小,变弱

diminish v. 减少,缩小

hypnotize v. 使欲睡,使蒙胧

undoing n. 祸根,毁灭的原因

screen n. 电视机屏幕

resolution n. 决心

resolution

1. the quality of being resolute / formal decision

决心,决议

take resolution to do sth. / make up one?s mind to do sth.

be determined to do sth. / decide to do sth.

resolve / resolve to do sth.

resolve sb. on sth. 使某人做某事

Eg: Before we came here, we resolved to learn English hard.

I resolved him on English study. 没有人使他做这样的决定。 Nobody resolved him on this decision. resolute adj. 坚决的,果断的 resolution / resolve / resolute 我们必须是言必信,行必果。 Eg: We must be true in word and resolute in deed. mentally adv. 内心里 v. 编辑,编制 compile compile compile / edit vt. editor compile: collect information and arrange in a book (great book / dictionary ) edit: collect information and arrange in newspaper or magazine Eg: The editor is busing editing the newspaper. formidable adj. 令人畏惧的 再发生,又出现 recur v. recur v. occor: happen occur to A good idea occurred to me. / It occurred to him that he should open the door. recur: occur again 导致,招致,造成 ( lead to / result in / give rise to / cause incur: vt.

Eg: Air pollution incurs some terrible dissease.

regularity n. 规律性

accomplishment n. 成就

attainment n. 达到

accomplish 成功地达到目的

accomplish one?s purpose / goal / dream / aim /work / task

He accomplished his journey.

attain: 得到,获得(经过艰苦努力)

attain one?s ambition

get sccess / attain success

achieve: 达到一定目的时的表现及努力

Eg: This is what he achieved after ten years of hard work.

treasure / cherish / volue / prize 珍惜

Eg: We always cherish what we have achieved.

I feel very happy because you accomplish your dream.

accomplishment: 成就(修养,才艺,本领方面)

attainment 获得,得到

Eg: Such accomplishment is beyond your attainment.

His attainment is beyond my understanding.

His accomplishment is unexpected to me.

achievement / accomplishment

attain to / attain

attain to: 某人希望达到的成就

attain: 某人已经达到的成就

Eg: He has attained heights that I can never attain to.

This is the height that I hope to attain to.

This is the height that I have attained.

inveterate adj. 根深蒂固的

self-improvement n. 自我完善

scheme n. 简单的计划,方案

ambitious adj. 雄心勃勃的

ambition

Eg: Everybody in the modern society must be ambitious.

If you work hard, you can attain your ambition.

pitfall n. 意外的困难,易犯的错误

modest adj. 要求不过分的

Eg: I make New Year resolution and I think them modest.

Eg: Being modes is one of our virtues.

assiduously adv. 刻苦地

assiduously==diligently

Eg: If you study English assiduously, nothing is difficult.

self-discipline n. 自我约束

self-improvement 自我完善

frame n. 躯体

body

betray v. 暴露,显露

Eg: I don?t know who betrayed me.

Her face betrayed her nervousness.

troop v. 成群结队地走动

unsettle v. 使不安

taunt n. 嘲笑,奚落人的话

taunt vt.

taunt sb. with sth. 因为某事而讥笑某人

Eg: They taunt him with being poor / poverty.

make fun of / laugh at

Eg: He is wearing a strange hat, so we make fun of him.

jeer vi.

jeer at 嘲笑,戏弄

Eg: We know he is eccentric, but anyway don?t jeer at him

mock / mock at

Eg: Mocked (at ) by others, he had my sympathy.

When the teacher is writing on the blackboard, naughty boy student mocked at him.

scoff at / pour scorn on

Eg: Don?t scoff at those students who don?t have good accomplishment / mark.

gibe

gible at sb. / sth.

taunt: try to make sb. angry or upset by saying unkind remarks.

Eg: They taunted him with being poor, so he felt angry.

gibe: say sth. that is intended to make the person look silly.

Eg: I gibed at him because, in my opinion, he was dull.

jibe n. 嘲弄,挖苦

good-humouredly adv. 和气地,心情好地

wane v. 逐渐变小,变弱

wane: becoming less or weaker

Eg: He exerts suttle influence on his children, but his children are growing up, so his influence is waning.

wane: showing a decreasing bright area after full moon.

The moon will wax, the moon will wane. 月有阴晴园缺

diminish v. 减少,缩小

diminish: vt. make smaller in size, amout, number and so on.

Eg: The Second World War diminished the country?s wealth.

diminish vi.

Eg: Time will never cause our friendship to diminish. 淡薄。 我们的友谊决不会因时间的流逝而

reduce

Eg: If you reduce the price to 10 dollars, I will take it.

reduce to / reduce by

The shop assistant reduced the price by 10 dollars.

lessen 数量,价值,可能性的降低

sharp / sharped wide / widen quick / quicken

Eg: I agree to your idea that you can climb the tree, but anyway, please lesson the rick of being hurt / injoured

I agree to your idea that you can climb the tree, but anyway, please lessen the risk of being hurt / injured.

increase / decrease

Eg: Our interest in English / clothes is increasing.

lessen 可能性的降低

wane 渐渐地衰退

hypnotize v. 使欲睡,使蒙胧

lull 催人欲睡

lull sb. to sleep

undoing n. 祸根,毁灭的原因

screen n. 电视机屏幕

## 三、【课文精析】

Key sentence:

The New Year is a time for resolutions.

a time for

The spring Festival is a time for gathering.
Mentally: at heart
We become illogical when we decide what can be eaten and what can not be eaten.
Key sentence:
The same old favorites recur year in year out with monotonous regularity.
favourite: resolution
recur: happen / take place
year in year out: one year after another / year by year
day by day / one day after another / day in day out
resolve to : 下定决心
Key sentence:
Past experience has taught us that certain accomplishments are beyond attainment.
It is hard for us to attain some certain accomplishment
inveterate: deep rooted
Key sentence:
If we remain inveterate smokers, it is only because we have so often experienced the frustration that results from failure.

Because we have too often experience the frustration, it means nothing to me.

result from: 由 产生的
result in: lead to / cause
Failure will result in frustration. 失败会导致挫败心理。
Key sentence:
Most of us fail in our efforts at self-improvement because our schemes are too ambitious and we never have time to carry them out.
carry out: carry off
fail in our efforts / attempt
Eg: We accumulate clutter in an attempt to avoid waste.
Key sentence:
We also make the fundamental error of announcing our resolutions to everybody so that we look even more foolish when we slip back into our bad old ways.
Eg: If you often make some common mistakes, you will get the frustration.
slip back into: return to the normal way
Key sentence:
Aware of these pitfalls, this year I attempted to keep my resolutions to myself.
keep my resolutions to myself: keep my resolutions secret
Eg: We arrived at our destination exhausted.
Exhausted, we arrived at our destination.

由于意识到了此事的重要性,我竭尽

Aware of the importance, I attempt to carry it out.

全力来把它实现。

limit oneself to
ambitions: New Year resolutions
limit: 限定到点
restrict: 限定到范围
Key sentence:
but on the second, I applied myself assiduously to the task.
apply oneself to / apply one?s time to / apply one?s mind / energy to
be devoted / dedicated to
In 2002, I shall apply myself to learning English.
propose to do / I decided to do
The self-discipline required to study English hard is considerable as well.
nevertheless: however
Key sentence:
I sat down at the breakfast table in an exhausted condition.
in an exhausted condition:
exhausted
Itthat 句型
It was exhausted condition that betrayed my secret.
troop in: went / came into the room in group
unsettle: upset

fend off: defeat wane: diminish step by step argue: got a good excuse keep one?s mind fresh for doing sth. Key sentence: Resisting the hypnotizing effect of television, I sat in my room for a few evenings with my eyes glued to a book. the temptation to do slip back into our bad old ways / I was back to where I had started from / got back to my old bad habit dozing off: half sleep I soon got back to my old bad habit of nodding. a book entitled: a book which is entitled We must be true in word and resolute in deed.

一、【 Text 】课文

Lesson 52 Mud is mud

My cousin, Harry, keeps a large curiously-shaped bottle on permanent display in his study. Despite the fact that the bottle is tinted a delicate shade of green, an observant visitor would soon notice that it is filled with what looks like a thick, grayish substance. If you were to ask Harry what was in the bottle, he would tell you

实事求是

that it contained perfumed mud. If you expressed doubt or surprise, he would immediately invite you to smell it and then to rub some into your skin. This brief experiment would dispel any further doubts you might have. The bottle really does contain perfumed mud. How Harry came into the possession of this outlandish stuff makes an interesting story which he is fond of relating. Furthermore, the acquisition of this bottle cured him of a bad habit he had been developing for years.

Harry used to consider it a great joke to go into expensive cosmetic shops and make outrageous requests for goods that do not exist. He would invent fanciful names on the spot. On entering a shop, he would ask for a new perfume called 'Scented Shadow' or for 'insoluble bath cubes'. If a shop assistant told him she had not heard of it, he would pretend to be considerably put out. He loved to be told that one of his imaginary products was temporarily out of stock and he would faithfully promise to call again at some future date, but of course he never did. How Harry managed to keep a straight face during these performances is quite beyond me.

Harry does not need to be prompted to explain how he bought his precious bottle of mud. One day, he went to an exclusive shop in London and asked for 'Myrolite', the shop assistant looked puzzled and Harry repeated the word, slowly stressing each syllable. When the woman shook her head in bewilderment, Harry went on to explain that 'myrolite' was a hard, amber-like substance which could be used to remove freckles. This explanation evidently conveyed something to the woman who searched shelf after shelf. She produced all sorts of weird concoctions, but none of them met with Harry's requirements. When Harry put on his act of being mildly annoyed, the assistant promised to order some for him. Intoxicated by his success, Harry then asked for perfumed mud. He expected the assistant to look at him in blank astonishment. However, it was his turn to be surprised, for the woman's eyes immediately lit up and she fetched several bottles which she placed on the counter for Harry to inspect. For once, Harry had to admit defeat. He picked up what seemed to be the smallest bottle and discreetly asked the price. He was glad to get away with a mere twenty pounds and he beat a hasty retreat, clutching the precious bottle under his arm. From then on, Harry decided that this little game he had invented might prove to be expensive. The curious bottle, which now adorns the bookcase in his study, was his first and last purchase of rare cosmetics.

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

permanent adj. 永久的

tint v. 给 ......染色

delicate adj. 淡色的

shade n. 色度

observant adj. 观察力敏锐的

greyish adj. 浅灰色的

dispel v. 驱散,消除

outlandish adj. 稀奇古怪的

acquisition n. 获得

cosmetic n. 化妆品

outrageous adj. 无理的,令人不能容忍的

fanciful adj. 想像出来的

insoluble adj. 不可溶解的

prompt v. 敦促,激励

exclusive adj. 专售高档商品的

syllable n. 音节

bewilderment n. 迷惑,糊涂

freckle n. 雀斑

evidently adv. 显然的,明显地

weird adj. 奇异的, 古怪的

concoction n. 调制品

intoxicate v. 陶醉,得意忘形

blank adj. 无表情的,茫然的

discreetly adv. 谨慎地

clutch v. 抓住

adorn v. 装饰,打扮

permanent adj. 永久的

permanent job / house

temporary 临时的

tint v. 给 .....染色

tint the paper yellow 把纸染成黄色 (双宾语)

delicate adj. 淡色的

Eg: I like the delicate dress. 我喜欢淡颜色,比较雅致的裙子。

shade n. 色度

shade 荫凉

in the shade 在荫凉处

shady adj.

in the shady street 在有荫凉的街道上

in the shady spot 在有荫凉的地方

observant adj. 观察力敏锐的

greyish adj. 浅灰色的

light grey

dispel v. 驱散,消除

outlandish adj.	稀奇古怪的	
odd		
strange		
fantastic		
queer		
peculiar		
weird		
eccentric		
outlandish: queer		
strange and unpleasa	nt	
weird: strange and un	natural	
difficult to understand		
acquisition n.	获得	
acquire		
acquire confidence		
acquire courage		
acquire knowledge		
acquire skills		
acquisition: the act of	acquiring	
Eg: He devotes his tin	ne to the acquisition of knowledge.	他把全部的精力都用在知识的

获得上。

```
the acquisition of sth. (
                           通常形式 )
Eg: Acquiring confidence is essential.
The acquisition of confidence is essential.
The acqisition of skills is necessary in the modern society.
                仅指精神上的获得
acquirement:
              可以指泛泛的概念
acquisition:
the acquisition / acquirement of knowledge
                                                    知识的获得
the acquisition of money
                             金钱的获得
Eg:The acquisition of money is what a large number of people run after.
                化妆品
  cosmetic n.
  outrageous adj.
                     无理的,令人不能容忍的
He found my offer outrageous
unreasonable
irrational
illogical
ridiculous
unpleasant
unpleasing
  fanciful adj.
                 想像出来的
imaginable
imagining doing
```

fancying doing

insoluble adj. 不可溶解的

solve 解决

insolve 不可溶解

prompt v. 敦促,激励

vt. urge sb. to do sth.

persuade sb. to do sth.

prompt sb. to do

Eg: What prompted him to be so generous.

Our discussion prompted some questions. 我们的讨论引出了几个问题。

lead to; cause; result in;

Eg: What prompts you to study English so hard?

promptly adv.

prompt: quick

take measure 采取措施

Eg: He took a prompt measure. 他作出了一个果断的决定。

He made a prompt decision.

swift 没有任何干扰,一点也不费力地连续不断地迅速,形容相当快

Eg: His rise to fame was swift.

The car is going fast.

The car is going swiftly.

He made rapid / swift progress.

rapid 迅速的 (某事发生的速度快)

快速康复 rapid recovery Eg: He is still young, so his recovery is rapid. speedy don?t do it in such a speedy way. haste 欲速则不达 more haste less speed. 匆匆忙忙,草率 hasty Eg: Sometimes we make a decision hastily. Sometimes we make a decision in a haste way. 专售高档商品的 exclusive adj. syllable n. 音节 迷惑,糊涂 bewilderment n. bewilder : puzzle Eg: Your question puzzled me. 令人眼花缭乱 bewilder: Eg: Yesterday I went shopping, but countless beautiful dresses bewildered me.

freckle n. 雀斑

in bewilderment

evidently adv. 显然的,明显地

evident 显眼的,突出的

Eg: She is evident at party.

in evidence 相当于 evident, 也相当于 evidently

weird adj. 奇异的, 古怪的

concoction n. 调制品

intoxicate v. 陶醉,得意忘形

excite greatly beyond self-control

be intoxicated by

be intoxicated with

Eg: When we pass out important examinations, we are intoxiacated with our success.

intoxicate 喝醉

Eg: If you drink too much whiskey, you will get intoxicated.

get drunk

become intoxicated.

intoxicating 令人陶醉的

Eg: He failed in his examination, but he was intoxicated with that, and his intoxication was beyond my understanding.

blank adj. 无表情的,茫然的

discreetly adv. 谨慎地

discreet ==careful in speech and action

Eg: He?s discreet in giving his opinion.

He?s discreet in airing his views.

When you have to make a big decision, particularly in front of a large number of people, you must be discreet.

```
be discreet in doing sth.
        细心的 (不表示谨慎)
careful
Eg: Whatever we do, we must be careful.
Be careful, a car is rushing towards you.
                   (既表示细心,又表示谨慎)
          谨慎的
cautious
Eg: He is a cautious person, so whatever he does, he is not only discreet but careful
as well.
               考虑周到的,细心的
                                     ( thoughtful
considerate:
Eg: You will live easily if you have a considerate friend with you.
          慎重的
prudent
Eg: You must make a prudent decision.
wary 小心翼翼的
tactful
        机智的,考虑周全的
tact 机智
discreet / careful / cautious / considerate / prudent
             抓住
  clutch v.
snatch
seize
grasp
clutch
clasp
```

adorn v. 装饰,打扮

well decorated walls 装饰得很漂亮的墙壁

adorn 打扮,佩戴

Eg: We adorn our rooms with flowers.

decorate: 装修

Eg: Newly weds embark on the task of decorating their new house. 自己的新房子。

新婚夫妇忙着装修

adorn 装点

Eg: He adoned his story with all sorts of adventures that never happened.

She adorned her dress with a lace.

ornament v. 增添细节或装饰物

Eg: The dress is ornamented / adorned with lace.

a woman adorned in jewelry and fur 一位珠光宝气、穿着皮衣的妇女

in jeans 穿着牛仔裤

in jewelry 佩戴首饰

in fur 穿着裘皮大衣

a miss adorned in mink coat 一位穿着貂皮大衣的小姐

a beautifully adorned room

a beautifully decorated house

## 三、【课文精析】

keep sth. on permanent display

duriously-shaped 形状奇怪的

wine bottles of all shapes and sizes

despite the fact that 尽管事实如此 in spite of the fact that 过去常常而现在不 used to would 现在有可能存在 Eg: He would often have clas in the morning. 和 if you were to 可以互换 if you should 动词原形 可能性大 should + 动词原形 可能性极小 were to + Key sentence: If you expressed doubt or surprise Key sentence: This brief experiment would dispel any further doubts you might have. 简单的 simple brief: does 用来加强语气 Key sentence: How Harry came into the possession of this outlandish stuff makes an interesting story which he is fond of relating. 获得的过程 come into the possession of sth. Eg: How harry married his beautiful wife makes an interesting story. 娶了这样一位漂亮的妻子还有一段有趣的故事。 he is fond of relating == he is fond of talking about

stuff==material == substance

Key sentence:

furthermore == what is more == moreover

哈里是怎么样

the acquisition of this bottle cured him of a bad habit he had been developing for years.

own habits by heart 积习难改,本性难移

Key sentence:

Harry used to consider it a great joke to go into expensive cosmetic shops and make outrageous requests for goods that do not exist.

consider it a great joke to do sth. 把做某事看作是巨大的乐趣

consider it great fun

consider it great amusement

consider it a great joy

He would invent fanciful names on the spot. == He would invent names imaginable on the sopt.

on the sopt 当场,当时

on entering a shop== as soon as he enters a shop

Key sentence:

he would pretend to be considerably put out.

pretend to do 装做 ......

put out == upset == annoy

Eg: He was put out by my rude words.

imaginary 虚构的,想象的

out of stock 脱销

Key sentence: he would faithfully promise to call again at some future date 信誓旦旦地说 faithfully permise at some future date == some day == one day Key sentence: How Harry managed to keep a straight face during these performances is quite beyond me. keep a straight face == keep serious is quite beyond me == is quite beyond my understanding == is quite beyond my imagination how 引导主语从句 永远展示,陈列 keep sth. on permanent display Eg: We don?t know how he came into (the) possession of the farm. 自然而然地,相当于 willingly of his own accord Key sentence: Harry does not need to be prompted to explain exclusive shop: only wealthy people can visit such expensive shop exclusive right to publish their stories exclusive: 独家的,独占的;不相容的 The school is exclusive.

exclusive shop

专售高档商品的商店

the shop assistant looked puzzled and Harry repeated the word stressing each syllable.	, slowly
puzzled 茫然不知所措	
bewildered	
stressing 加重每一个音节	
go on to do sth. 继续做别的事情	
cat-like; dog-like	
amber-like 象琥珀一样的	
be used to do 被用来干	
be used to doing 习惯于做	
Key sentence:	
This explanation evidently conveyed something to the woman who searched shelf after shelf.	
shelf after shelf == one shelf after another	
produced == showed	
He produced a cigaret to me.   他拿出了一颗烟给我。	
Key sentence:	
She produced all sorts of weird concoctions, but none of them met with Harry's requirements.	

满足某人的需要

Key sentence:

meet with sb?s requirments / need

requirments == demands When Harry put on his act of being mildly annoyed put on his act of doing 装模作样 put on == pretend Eg: She said that she felt ill, but she was just putting it on. 他装出理解我的话的样子。 He put on the act of understanding me / what I said. He pretends to be wealthy. He put on an act of being wealthy. Key sentence: Intoxicated by his success, Harry then asked for perfumed mud. 茫然惊奇地 in blank astonishment Key sentence: However, it was his turn to be surprised, for the woman's eyes immediately lit up and she fetched several bottles which she placed on the counter for Harry to inspect. 惊奇地 surprised == amazed Eg: The custom off icer?s face lit up as soon as he saw the tiny bottle on the bottom of my suitcase. inspect ==choose == select 认输 admit defeat == take a beating My aunt Harriet found piles of bottles of all shapes and sizes in what had been

Bessie?s wordrobe.

,The curious bottle, which now adorns the bookcase in his study, was his first and last purchase of rare cosmetics.?

非限制性定语从句

Eg: The girl studies English well who lives in my neighbourhood.

The girl, who lives in my neighbourhood, studies English well.

重点结构表达:

admit defeat 认输

beat a hasty retreat 匆忙溜掉

stress each syllable 加强音节

in bewilderment

in blank astonishment

Lesson 53 In the public interest 为了公众的利益

一、【 Text 】课文

The Scandinavian countries are much admired all over the world for their enlightened social policies. Sweden has evolved an excellent system for protecting the individual citizen from high-handed or incompetent public officers. The system has worked so well, that it has been adopted in other countries too.

The Swedes were the first to recognize that public official like civil servants, police officers, health inspectors or tax-collectors can make mistakes or act over-zealously in the belief that they are serving the public. As long ago as 1809, the Swedish Parliament introduced a scheme to safeguard the interest of the individual. A parliamentary committee representing all political parties appoints a person who is suitably qualified to investigate private grievances against the State. The official title of the person is 'Justiteombudsman', but the Swedes commonly refer to him as the 'J.O.' or 'Ombudsman'. The Ombudsman is not subject to political pressure. He investigates complaints large and small that come to him from all levels of society. As complaints must be made in writing, the Ombudsman receives an average of 1,200 letters a year. He has eight lawyer assistants to help him and examines every single letter in detail. There is nothing secretive about the Ombudsman's work, for his correspondence is open to public inspection. If a citizen's complaint is justified, the Ombudsman will act on his behalf. The action he takes varies according to the nature of the complaint. He may gently reprimand an official or even suggest to parliament that a law the altered. The following case is a typical example of the Ombudsman's work.

A foreigner living in a Swedish village wrote to the Ombudsman complaining that he had been ill-treated by the police, simply because he was a foreigner. The Ombudsman immediately wrote to the Chief of Police in the district asking him to send a record of the case. There was nothing in the record to show that the foreigner's complaint was justified and the Chief of Police strongly denied the accusation. It was impossible for the Ombudsman to take action, but when he received a similar complaint from another foreigner in the same village, he immediately sent one of his layers to investigate the matter. The lawyer ascertained that a policeman had indeed dealt roughly with foreigners on several occasions. The fact that the policeman was prejudiced against foreigners could not be recorded in

the official files. It was only possible for the Ombudsman to find this out by sending one of his representatives to check the facts. The policeman in question was severely reprimanded and was informed that if any further complaints were lodged against him, he would be prosecuted. The Ombudsman's prompt action at once put an end to an unpleasant practice which might have gone unnoticed.

二、【 New words and expressions 】 生词和短语

evolve v. 逐渐形成

high-handed adj. 高压的,专横的

incompetent adj. 不够格的,不称职的

over-zealously adv. 过分热情地

safeguard v. 保护

parliamentary adj. 国会的

qalified adj. 合格的

grievance n. 不平,冤屈

Justiteombudsman n. (瑞典的)司法特派员

ombudsman n. (瑞典和英国的)司法特派员

secretive adj. 保密的

correspondence n. 来往信件

alter v. 改变

accusation n. 谴责,指控

ascertain v. 查出,查明

prejudiced adj. 有偏见的,不公平的

prompt adj. 即时的

evolve v. 逐渐形成

vt. develop gradually

Eg: He has developed / evolved a new system for running the factory.

evolve a system for doing sth.

Man has evolved from the ape. 人类是从类人猿进化而来的。(演化)

evolve from

evolution 发展,演变

Eg: The evolution isn?t unexpected.

-ism / socialism / evolutionism 进化论

evolutionist 进化论者

evolutional 发展的, 进化的

resolve (L50) / resolve to do sth. 下定决心做某事

resolution / revolve

Eg: The earth is round, and every day and night it is revolving.

involve vt. 卷入,牵涉 / be involved in

Eg: He is involved in the case.

high-handed adj. 高压的,专横的

incompetent adj. 不够格的,不称职的

competent: having ability / qualification to do sth.

be competent to do sth.

be competent for sth.

qualified / fit

Eg: He is competent / qualified / fit for the job.

```
incompetent / unfit
competent: sufficient / enough adequate
Eg: He has a competent knowledge of French.
He is competent to teach the language.
competnece / qualification for / to
the competence for / to
Eg: He has the ability to do the job.
He has the capability / capacity of doing the job.
He has the competence to do / for the job.
qualification
                            过分热情地
  over-zealously adv.
over- zealous / zealously
                   保护
  safeguard v.
                         书面用语,比较正式
safequard: n. / vt. (
protect
Eg: We must safeguard our motherland.
We must safegiard our state territorial integrity.
Keeping clean is a safeguard against disease.
safeguard / guard
                        保安
Eg: We need several safeguards.
protect
```

safeguard / protect our eyes

国会的 parliamentary adj. 合格的 qalified adj. 不平,冤屈 grievance n. grief Eg: I can?t go to the cinema with you tonight becaus grief. grieve: cause grief to Eg: It grieves me to see him in such bad health. grieve for / about / over grieve / in grief grieve / it grieves me (瑞典的)司法特派员 Justiteombudsman n. (瑞典和英国的)司法特派员 ombudsman n. 保密的 secretive adj. secritive letters 来往信件 correspondence n. keep up correspondence 保持通信联系 keep in touch with sb. by writing letters

Eg: We keep up correspondence recently for several years.

by / through correspondence

by writing letters

e I have to comfort my friend in

correspondence school 函授学校

correspondence course 函授课程

correspondence: agreement / similarity 相似,一致

in correspondence with sb. 与 ...... 一致 / 保持通信联系

bring sth. into correspondence with sth.

Eg: We must bring your idea into correspondence with mine.

correspondent 通信员,通信者

alter v. 改变

alter / change

alter: change in character, appearance etc. partly

Eg: The shirt must be altered. It is too large.

change: 完全、彻底的变化

Eg: Great changes have taken place in our country.

He changed a lot after so many years of hard work, so I even can?t recog

nise him.

convert: 改变(态度上) ; 变化

Eg: He converted to Buddhism.

The new house is converted from an old one.

transform: 形态或性质上发生变化,主要指物理能量上的转变,或电压的改变

Eg: We can transform one form of energy into another.

vary: 由于改变而使多样化

Eg: Customs vary with the times

turn

谴责,指控 accusation n. 查出,查明 ascertain v. find out / get to know / make certain / make sure Eg: Let us ascertain when we will hold the party. 读音: certain / ascertain 有偏见的,不公平的 prejudiced adj. prejudice 傲慢与偏见 Pride and Prejudice 即时的 prompt adj. 三、【课文精析】 for: because of be admired for Eg: He is admired by us for his humor. worldwide Key sentence: evolved an excellent system for protecting the individual citizen from.. evolve a system for doing sth. protect / safeguard from

ement.

我不能够掩饰我幸灾乐祸的心情。

Eg: I can?t conceal my amus

Your excitement is beyond me. 你的激动的表现 / 心情是我难以理解的。

evolve an excellent system for doing sth.

has worked so well: workable

adopt / adapt

adopt 采纳

adapt 改编,以适应(指修改或改变以适应新条件)

unsuitable mistakes

were the first / secone / last / only to do sth.

public officials: public officers

in the belief that: believe in

Eg: He turned to me for help because he believed that I could help him.

He turned to me for help in the believe that I could lend him a hand.

He turned to me for help believing that I could lend him a hand.

in the hope: hoping

in the thought: thinking

Eg: We come here in the hope that we will learn English well.

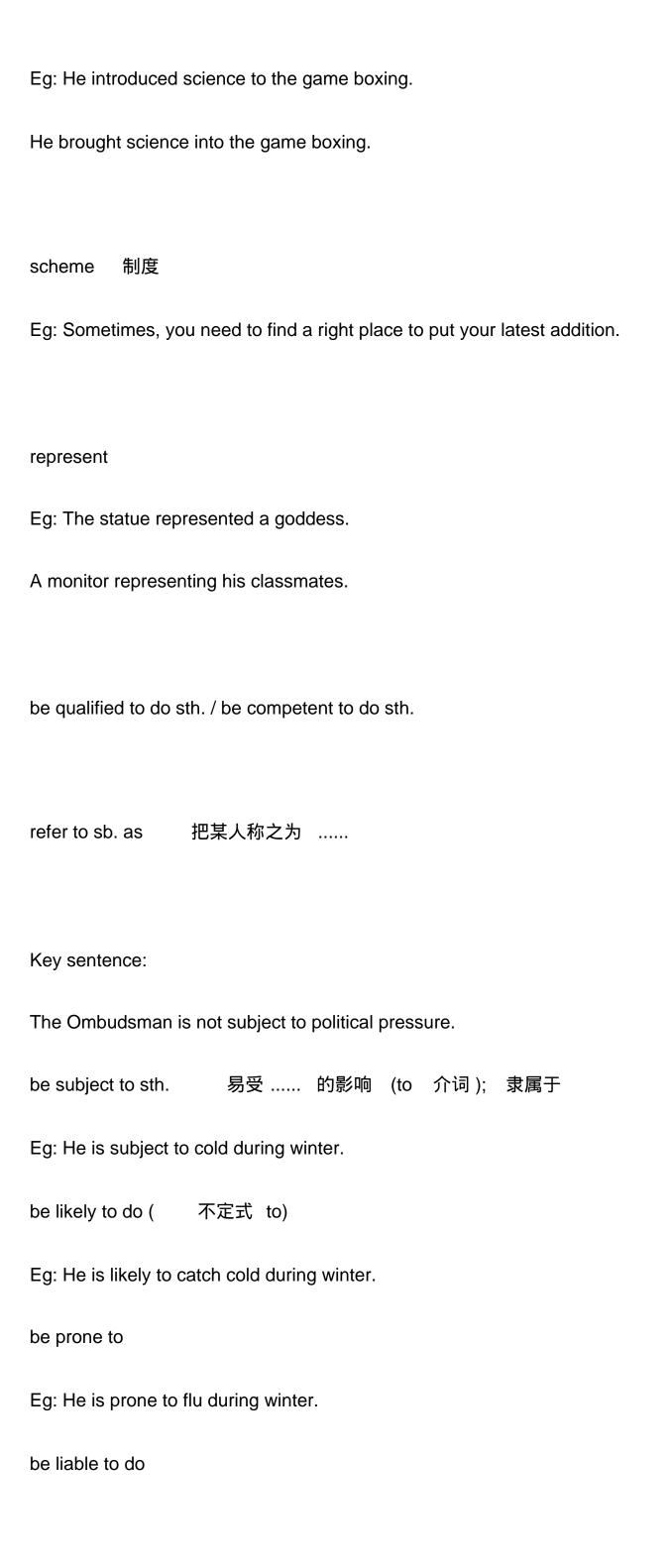
We come here hoping to learn English well.

Judges, however wise or eminent, are mortak and can make mistakes.

as long ago as 1809: dating back to 1809

date back to / date from

introduce : bring in 引入



	_		
-		т	_
┰	呷	_	
)K			

Eg: Your plan is subject to my approval.

We have a good plan, but the plan must be subject to our teacher?s approval.

Key sentence:

He investigates complaints large and small that come to him from all levels of society.

complaints large and small

形容词短语做定语,放在被修饰词之后

grievances

Eg: A great many students, boy and girl, went to the party yesterday.

Many people, old and yound, visit the shop.

be made in writing: be written down

an average of 平均

I work for 8 hours every day.

I work for an average of 8 hours a day.

We have got 15 students in each class.

each 二个的平均

every 三个以上的平均

Eg: We have got an average of 15 students in each / every class.

in detail / in details

justified: justice

on his behalf: in his interest

accuse sb. of doing sth.

名词前加定冠词 the 表	示"这一类	"时,名	词就不要加表示	₹ <b>复数</b> 的	<b>-</b> S,	否则则表示这部分。
Eg: The refrigerators are u	seful during	hot sur	mmer. (		错)	
The refrigerator is useful d	uring hot su	mmer.				
Refrigerators are useful du	ring hot sum	nmer.				
A refrigerator is useful duri	ng hot sumr	ner.				
nature: character						
a law (should) be altered						
suggest to sb.						
Key sentence:						
The following case is a typ	ical example	e of the	Ombudsman's	work.		
The following case is a typ	ical example	e of it yo	ou can judge by	yourself		
Key sentence:						
A foreigner living in a Swedish village.	dish village:	A forei	gner who is livir	ng in a		
A foreigner wrote a letter to	the Ombuc	dsman (	complaining			
The editor sent a fax instru	cting the jou	ırnalist	to get statistics			
simply because: only beca	use / just be	cause				

the matter: the case
Key sentence:
The lawyer ascertained that a policeman had indeed dealt roughly with foreigners on several occasions.
ascertain that / sth.
made sure that / made certain that
dealt roughly with: ill-treated
be prejudiced against sb. / sth.
Eg: If you are prejudiced against sth. , you must take objection to it.
find this out: to discover it
check the facts: verify the facts
It is only possible for us to learn the language well if we study hard.
representative / represent
a committee representing all political parties
lawyer assistants
in question:  当事的,所涉及的
practice: what the policeman did / the way that he treated with foreigners
put an end to
stop
prevent
You prevent me from doing the work

## Key sentence:

The Ombudsman's prompt action at once put an end to an unpleasant practice which might have gone unnoticed.

which might have gone unnoticed: which might have gone without being noticed

Eg: If they had had only one more child, they would have lived in obscurity unnoticed.